

South Africa - Census 2011 - IPUMS Subset

Statistics South Africa, Minnesota Population Center - University of Minnesota

Report generated on: April 19, 2019

Visit our data catalog at: <http://microdata.worldbank.org>

Sampling

Sampling Procedure

MICRODATA SOURCE: Statistics South Africa

SAMPLE DESIGN: Systematic stratified sample. 1 in 10 sample of household records classified as housing units or converted households, and an independent 1 in 10 sample of persons who resided in other living quarters. Local municipalities were the primary strata and demographic characteristics of persons within the household were used as secondary strata.

SAMPLE UNIT: household

SAMPLE FRACTION: 8.50%

SAMPLE SIZE (person records): 4,418,594

Weighting

Weights computed by census agency should be used for most types of analysis.

Questionnaires

Overview

Three separate questionnaires were used to enumerate the household population (form A), transient individuals and individuals staying in hotels on census night (form B), and the institutional population (form C).

Data Collection

Data Collection Dates

Start	End	Cycle
2011-10-10	2011-10-10	N/A

Data Collection Mode

Face-to-face [f2f]

DATA COLLECTION NOTES

De facto, CENSUS DAY: October 10, 2011

Data Processing

No content available

Data Appraisal

No content available

File Description

Variable List

ZAF2011-H-H

Content	Household records
Cases	0
Variable(s)	107
Structure	Type: relational Keys: SERIAL(Household serial number)
Version	Version 6.4, IPUMS sample
Producer	Minnesota Population Center
Missing Data	

Variables

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V1	ZA2011A_0001	Dwelling number	contin	numeric	Dwelling number
V2	ZA2011A_0002	Household number (within dwelling)	discrete	numeric	Household number (within dwelling)
V3	ZA2011A_0006	Number of persons in household	discrete	numeric	Number of persons in household
V4	ZA2011A_0016	Dwelling created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household	discrete	numeric	Dwelling created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household
V5	ZA2011A_0021	Questionnaire type	discrete	numeric	Questionnaire type
V6	ZA2011A_0022	Serial number for questionnaire	contin	numeric	Serial number for questionnaire
V7	ZA2011A_0023	Type of living quarters	discrete	numeric	H-01 Type of living quarters What is the type of these living quarters? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Housing unit 2. Residential Hotel 3. Home for the aged 4. Converted hostel 5. Other If 2-4, Go to H-07 [Question H-01 through M-05 were asked of households in housing units or converted hostels]
V8	ZA2011A_0024	Type of dwelling (for main dwelling)	discrete	numeric	H-01 Type of living quarters What is the type of these living quarters? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Housing unit 2. Residential Hotel 3. Home for the aged 4. Converted hostel 5. Other If 2-4, Go to H-07 [Question H-01 through M-05 were asked of households in housing units or converted hostels]
V9	ZA2011A_0025	Type of dwelling (for other dwelling)	discrete	numeric	H-01 Type of living quarters What is the type of these living quarters? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Housing unit 2. Residential Hotel 3. Home for the aged 4. Converted hostel 5. Other If 2-4, Go to H-07 [Question H-01 through M-05 were asked of households in housing units or converted hostels]
V10	ZA2011A_0026	Roof material	discrete	numeric	H-02a Construction material What is the main material used for the construction of the roof and wall of the MAIN dwelling? Write the appropriate code in the boxes. Roof __ Wall __ 01. Brick 02. Cement block/Concrete 03. Corrugated iron/zinc 04. Wood 05. Plastic 06. Cardboard 07. Mud and cement mix 08. Wattle and daub 09. Tile 10. Mud 11. Thatch/Grass 12. Asbestos 13. Other
V11	ZA2011A_0027	Wall material	discrete	numeric	H-02a Construction material What is the main material used for the construction of the roof and wall of the MAIN dwelling? Write the appropriate code in the boxes. Roof __ Wall __ 01. Brick 02. Cement block/Concrete 03. Corrugated iron/zinc 04. Wood 05. Plastic 06. Cardboard 07. Mud and cement mix 08. Wattle and daub 09. Tile 10. Mud 11. Thatch/Grass 12. Asbestos 13. Other

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V12	ZA2011A_0028	Number of dining rooms	discrete	numeric	H-03 Rooms How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes Dining rooms __ Living rooms __ Dining/Living room __ Bedrooms __ Study rooms __ One room with multiple uses __ Other rooms __ Total rooms __ Exclude bathrooms and kitchen. Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.
V13	ZA2011A_0029	Number of living rooms	discrete	numeric	H-03 Rooms How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes Dining rooms __ Living rooms __ Dining/Living room __ Bedrooms __ Study rooms __ One room with multiple uses __ Other rooms __ Total rooms __ Exclude bathrooms and kitchen. Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.
V14	ZA2011A_0030	Number of dining or living rooms	discrete	numeric	H-03 Rooms How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes Dining rooms __ Living rooms __ Dining/Living room __ Bedrooms __ Study rooms __ One room with multiple uses __ Other rooms __ Total rooms __ Exclude bathrooms and kitchen. Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.
V15	ZA2011A_0031	Number of bedrooms	discrete	numeric	H-03 Rooms How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes Dining rooms __ Living rooms __ Dining/Living room __ Bedrooms __ Study rooms __ One room with multiple uses __ Other rooms __ Total rooms __ Exclude bathrooms and kitchen. Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.
V16	ZA2011A_0032	Number of study rooms	discrete	numeric	H-03 Rooms How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes Dining rooms __ Living rooms __ Dining/Living room __ Bedrooms __ Study rooms __ One room with multiple uses __ Other rooms __ Total rooms __ Exclude bathrooms and kitchen. Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.
V17	ZA2011A_0033	Number of multi-use rooms	discrete	numeric	H-03 Rooms How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes Dining rooms __ Living rooms __ Dining/Living room __ Bedrooms __ Study rooms __ One room with multiple uses __ Other rooms __ Total rooms __ Exclude bathrooms and kitchen. Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.
V18	ZA2011A_0034	Number of rooms used for other purposes	discrete	numeric	H-03 Rooms How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes Dining rooms __ Living rooms __ Dining/Living room __ Bedrooms __ Study rooms __ One room with multiple uses __ Other rooms __ Total rooms __ Exclude bathrooms and kitchen. Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.
V19	ZA2011A_0035	Total number of rooms	discrete	numeric	H-03 Rooms How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes Dining rooms __ Living rooms __ Dining/Living room __ Bedrooms __ Study rooms __ One room with multiple uses __ Other rooms __ Total rooms __ Exclude bathrooms and kitchen. Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.
V20	ZA2011A_0036	Tenure status	discrete	numeric	H-04 Tenure status What is the tenure status of this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _ 1. Rented 2. Owned but not yet paid off 3. Occupied rent-free 4. Owned and fully paid off 5. Other Refers to the main dwelling structure only and not to the land that it is situated on.

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V21	ZA2011A_0037	Water supply	discrete	numeric	H-07 Access to piped water In which way does this household mainly get piped water for household use? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _ 1. Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling 2. Piped (tap) water inside the yard 3. Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance less than 200m from dwelling 4. Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance between 200m and 500m from dwelling 5. Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance between 500m and 1000m (1 km) from dwelling 6. Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance greater than 1000m (1 km) from dwelling 7. No access to piped water
V22	ZA2011A_0038	Water source	discrete	numeric	H-08 Source of water What is this household's main source of water for household use? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _ 1. Regional/local water scheme (operated by municipality or other water services provider) 2. Borehole 3. Spring 4. Rain water tank 5. Dam/pool/stagnant water 6. River/stream 7. Water vendor 8. Water tanker 9. Other If 2-9, Go to H-10
V23	ZA2011A_0039	Interruption in water supply in last 12 months	discrete	numeric	H-09 Reliability of water supply In the last 12 months, has this household had any interruptions in piped water supply? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No If 2, Go to H-10
V24	ZA2011A_0040	Interruption of water supply lasted more than two days	discrete	numeric	H-09a Reliability of water supply Did any specific interruption(s) in piped water supply last longer than two days? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No If 2, Go to H-10
V25	ZA2011A_0041	Alternative water source	discrete	numeric	H-09b Alternative water source What alternative water source did the household use during water supply interruption? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _ 1. Borehole 2. Spring 3. Rain water tank 4. Dam/pool/stagnant water 5. River/stream 6. Water vendor 7. Water tanker 8. Other 0. None
V26	ZA2011A_0042	Toilet	discrete	numeric	H-10 Toilet facilities What is the main type of toilet facility used by this household? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _ 1. Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system) 2. Flush toilet (with septic tank) 3. Chemical toilet 4. Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP) 5. Pit toilet without ventilation 6. Bucket toilet 7. Other 0. None
V27	ZA2011A_0043	Fuel for cooking	discrete	numeric	H-11 Energy/fuel What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, heating and lighting? Write the appropriate code in the box. Cooking _ Heating _ Lighting _ 1. Electricity 2. Gas 3. Paraffin 4. Wood 5. Coal 6. Candles 7. Animal dung 8. Solar 9. Other 0. None Note: Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting Candles (6) cannot be used for heating or cooking
V28	ZA2011A_0044	Fuel for heating	discrete	numeric	H-11 Energy/fuel What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, heating and lighting? Write the appropriate code in the box. Cooking _ Heating _ Lighting _ 1. Electricity 2. Gas 3. Paraffin 4. Wood 5. Coal 6. Candles 7. Animal dung 8. Solar 9. Other 0. None Note: Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting Candles (6) cannot be used for heating or cooking
V29	ZA2011A_0045	Fuel for lighting	discrete	numeric	H-11 Energy/fuel What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, heating and lighting? Write the appropriate code in the box. Cooking _ Heating _ Lighting _ 1. Electricity 2. Gas 3. Paraffin 4. Wood 5. Coal 6. Candles 7. Animal dung 8. Solar 9. Other 0. None Note: Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting Candles (6) cannot be used for heating or cooking
V30	ZA2011A_0046	Refuse disposal	discrete	numeric	H-12 Refuse disposal How is the refuse or rubbish from this household mainly disposed of? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _ 1. Removed by local authority/private company at least once a week 2. Removed by local authority/private company less often 3. Communal refuse dump 4. Own refuse dump 5. No rubbish disposal 6. Other

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V31	ZA2011A_0047	Refrigerator	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V32	ZA2011A_0048	Electric or gas stove	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V33	ZA2011A_0049	Vacuum cleaner	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V34	ZA2011A_0050	Washing machine	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V35	ZA2011A_0051	Computer	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V36	ZA2011A_0052	Satellite television	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V37	ZA2011A_0053	DVD player	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V38	ZA2011A_0054	Motorcar	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V39	ZA2011A_0055	Television	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V40	ZA2011A_0056	Radio	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V41	ZA2011A_0057	Landline telephone	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V42	ZA2011A_0058	Cell phone	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V43	ZA2011A_0059	Mail post box or bag	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V44	ZA2011A_0060	Mail delivered at residence	discrete	numeric	H-13 Household goods and services Does this household own any of the following in working order? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes 1. Yes 2. No _ Refrigerator _ Electric/gas stove _ Vacuum cleaner _ Washing machine _ Computer _ Music center _ DVD Player _ Motorcar _ Television _ Radio _ Landline/Telephone _ Cell phone _ Mail Post box/bag _ Mail box at residence
V45	ZA2011A_0061	Access to internet	discrete	numeric	H-13a Access to internet How does this household mainly access internet? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _ 1. From home 2. From Cell phone 3. From elsewhere other than home 4. No access to internet
V46	ZA2011A_0062	Any deaths in past 12 months	discrete	numeric	M-00 Death occurred Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months (between 9 October 2010 and 9 October 2011)? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 2 or 3, Questionnaire completed
V47	ZA2011A_0063	Number of deaths	discrete	numeric	M-00 Death occurred Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months (between 9 October 2010 and 9 October 2011)? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 2 or 3, Questionnaire completed M-00a Number of deaths How many members of the household passed away in the last 12 months (between 9 October 2010 and 9 October 2011)? _ _
V48	ZA2011A_0067	Age of household head	discrete	numeric	Age of household head
V49	ZA2011A_0068	Race or ethnicity of household head	discrete	numeric	Race or ethnicity of household head
V50	ZA2011A_0069	Sex of household head	discrete	numeric	Sex of household head
V51	ZA2011A_0070	Annual income of household head in Rand	discrete	numeric	Annual income of household head in Rand
V52	ZA2011A_0071	Employment status of household head	discrete	numeric	Employment status of household head

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V53	ZA2011A_0073	Majority population group in the household	discrete	numeric	Majority population group in the household
V54	ZA2011A_0074	Annual household income category	discrete	numeric	Annual household income category
V55	ZA2011A_0075	Urban-rural status	discrete	numeric	Urban-rural status
V56	ZA2011A_0076	Household weight	contin	numeric	Household weight
V57	ZA2011A_0077	Number of mortality records	discrete	numeric	Number of mortality records
V58	RECTYPE	Record type	discrete	character	
V59	SAMPLE	IPUMS sample identifier	discrete	numeric	
V60	YEAR	Year	discrete	numeric	
V61	SERIAL	Household serial number	contin	numeric	
V62	AUTOS	Automobiles available	discrete	numeric	
V63	WASHER	Clothes washing machine	discrete	numeric	
V64	REFRIG	Refrigerator	discrete	numeric	
V65	TV	Television set	discrete	numeric	
V66	RADIO	Radio in household	discrete	numeric	
V67	HEADLOC	Head's location in household	contin	numeric	
V68	MUNIZA	South Africa, Municipality	discrete	numeric	
V69	GEOLEV1	1st subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time]	discrete	numeric	
V70	GEOLEV2	2nd subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time]	discrete	numeric	
V71	GEO1_ZA	South Africa, Province 2001 - 2011 [Level 1; consistent boundaries, GIS]	discrete	numeric	
V72	GEO1_ZA2011	South Africa, Province 2011 [Level 1, GIS]	discrete	numeric	
V73	GEO2_ZA	South Africa, District council 2001 - 2011 [Level 2; consistent boundaries, GIS]	discrete	numeric	
V74	GEO2_ZA2011	South Africa, District council 2011 [Level 2, GIS]	discrete	numeric	
V75	GQ	Group quarters (collective dwelling) status	discrete	numeric	
V76	UNREL	Number of unrelated persons	discrete	numeric	
V77	URBAN	Urban-rural status	discrete	numeric	

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V78	WATSUP	Water supply	discrete	numeric	
V79	PHONE	Telephone availability	discrete	numeric	
V80	CELL	Cellular phone availability	discrete	numeric	
V81	TRASH	Trash disposal	discrete	numeric	
V82	NFAMS	Number of families in household	discrete	numeric	
V83	NCOUPLES	Number of married couples in household	discrete	numeric	
V84	NMOTHERS	Number of mothers in household	discrete	numeric	
V85	NFATHERS	Number of fathers in household	discrete	numeric	
V86	COUNTRY	Country	discrete	numeric	
V87	ELECTRIC	Electricity	discrete	numeric	
V88	OWNERSHIP	Ownership of dwelling [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V89	OWNERSHIPD	Ownership of dwelling [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V90	FUELCOOK	Cooking fuel	discrete	numeric	
V91	FUELHEAT	Fuel for heating	discrete	numeric	
V92	INTERNET	Internet access	discrete	numeric	
V93	COMPUTER	Computer	discrete	numeric	
V94	ROOMS	Number of rooms	discrete	numeric	
V95	MORTNUM	Number of deaths in household last year	discrete	numeric	
V96	ANYMORT	Any deaths in household last year	discrete	numeric	
V97	REGIONW	Continent and region of country	discrete	numeric	
V98	BEDROOMS	Number of bedrooms	discrete	numeric	
V99	SUBSAMP	Subsample number	discrete	numeric	
V100	TOILET	Toilet	discrete	numeric	
V101	ROOF	Roof material	discrete	numeric	
V102	HHTYPE	Household classification	discrete	numeric	
V103	HHWT	Household weight	contin	numeric	
V104	ZA2011A_0081	Strata	contin	numeric	Strata
V105	WALL	Wall or building material	discrete	numeric	
V106	STRATA	Strata identifier	contin	numeric	
V107	PERSONS	Number of person records in the household	contin	numeric	

ZAF2011-P-H

Content	Person records
Cases	0
Variable(s)	154
Structure	Type: relational Keys: PERNUM(Person number), SERIAL(Household serial number [person version])
Version	Version 6.4, IPUMS sample
Producer	Minnesota Population Center
Missing Data	

Variables

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V108	ZA2011A_0003	Person number (within household)	discrete	numeric	Person number (within household)
V109	ZA2011A_0401	Age in completed years	discrete	numeric	F-02 Age in completed years _ _ _
V110	ZA2011A_0402	Sex	discrete	numeric	F-03 Sex Mark the appropriate circle with an X 1. Male 2. Female
V111	ZA2011A_0403	Day of birth	discrete	numeric	P-01 Date of birth What is [the person]'s date of birth? Day _ _ Month _ _ Year _ _ _ _
V112	ZA2011A_0405	Year of birth	discrete	numeric	P-01 Date of birth What is [the person]'s date of birth? Day _ _ Month _ _ Year _ _ _ _
V113	ZA2011A_0406	Relationship to head of household	discrete	numeric	P-02 Relationship What is [the person]'s relationship to the head or acting head of the household? The head or acting head is the person listed in row 1 of the first questionnaire, if more than one questionnaire has been completed for this household. Write the appropriate code in the box _ 01. Head/ Acting head 02. Husband/ Wife/ Partner 03. Son/ Daughter 04. Adopted Son/ Daughter 05. Stepchild 06. Brother/ Sister 07. Parent (Mother/ Father) 08. Parent-in-law 09. Grand/ Great Grandchild 10. Son/ Daughter-in-law 11. Brother/ Sister-in-law 12. Grandmother/ Father 13. Other relative 14. Non-related person.
V114	ZA2011A_0407	Marital status	discrete	numeric	P-03 Marital status Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Married 2. Living together like married partners 3. Never married 4. Widower/Widow 5. Separated 6. Divorced If 3-6, go to P-05
V115	ZA2011A_0409	Race or ethnicity	discrete	numeric	P-05 Population group How would [the person] describe him/herself in terms of population group? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Black African 2. Colored 3. Indian or Asian 4. White 5. Other
V116	ZA2011A_0410	First language most often used in the household	discrete	numeric	P-06 Language Which two languages does [the person] speak most often in this household? Write the appropriate code in the box. If no other language, write 00 in the second box. First _ _ Second _ _ 01. Afrikaans 02. English 03. IsiNdebele 04. IsiXhosa 05. IsiZulu 06. Sepedi 07. Sesotho 08. Setswana 09. SiSwati 10. Tshivenda 11. Xitsonga 12. Other
V117	ZA2011A_0411	Second language most often used in the household	discrete	numeric	P-06 Language Which two languages does [the person] speak most often in this household? Write the appropriate code in the box. If no other language, write 00 in the second box. First _ _ Second _ _ 01. Afrikaans 02. English 03. IsiNdebele 04. IsiXhosa 05. IsiZulu 06. Sepedi 07. Sesotho 08. Setswana 09. SiSwati 10. Tshivenda 11. Xitsonga 12. Other

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V118	ZA2011A_0412	Province of birth	discrete	numeric	P-07 Province of birth In which province was [the person] born? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 01. Western Cape 02. Eastern Cape 03. Northern Cape 04. Free State 05. Kwa-Zulu Natal 06. North West 07. Gauteng 08. Mpumalanga 09. Limpopo 10. Outside South Africa 11. Do not know If 01-09, go to P-09
V119	ZA2011A_0413	Country of birth	discrete	numeric	P-07 Province of birth In which province was [the person] born? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 01. Western Cape 02. Eastern Cape 03. Northern Cape 04. Free State 05. Kwa-Zulu Natal 06. North West 07. Gauteng 08. Mpumalanga 09. Limpopo 10. Outside South Africa 11. Do not know If 01-09, go to P-09 P-08 Country of birth In which country was [the person] born? Use capital letters only. ____
V120	ZA2011A_0414	Year of immigration	discrete	numeric	P-08a Year moved to South Africa In which year did [the person] move to South Africa? If moved more than once to South Africa, please indicate the year of the last move. ____
V121	ZA2011A_0415	Citizenship	discrete	numeric	P-09 South African Citizenship Is [the person] a South African citizen? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No
V122	ZA2011A_0416	Enumerated in province of usual residence	discrete	numeric	P-10 Usual residence Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No If 1, go to P-11
V123	ZA2011A_0417	Province of usual residence	discrete	numeric	P-10 Usual residence Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No If 1, go to P-11 P-10a Province of usual residence In which province does [the person] usually live? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 01. Western Cape 02. Eastern Cape 03. Northern Cape 04. Free State 05. Kwa-Zulu Natal 06. North West 07. Gauteng 08. Mpumalanga 09. Limpopo 10. Outside South Africa 11. Do not know If 10, go to P-11
V124	ZA2011A_0418	District of usual residence	discrete	numeric	P-10 Usual residence Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No If 1, go to P-11 P-10b Municipality/ Magisterial district of usual residence In which municipality or magisterial district does [the person] usually live? Use capital letters only. ____
V125	ZA2011A_0419	Living in place of usual residence since October 2001	discrete	numeric	P-11 Since 2001 Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Yes 2. No 3. Born after October 2001 but never moved. 4. Born after October 2001 and moved. If 1 or 3, go to P-12
V126	ZA2011A_0420	Month moved to place of usual residence	discrete	numeric	P-11 Since 2001 Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Yes 2. No 3. Born after October 2001 but never moved. 4. Born after October 2001 and moved. If 1 or 3, go to P-12 P-11a Month and year moved When did [the person] move to this place? Write the month and year in the appropriate boxes. Month __ Year ____
V127	ZA2011A_0421	Year moved to place of usual residence	discrete	numeric	P-11 Since 2001 Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Yes 2. No 3. Born after October 2001 but never moved. 4. Born after October 2001 and moved. If 1 or 3, go to P-12 P-11a Month and year moved When did [the person] move to this place? Write the month and year in the appropriate boxes. Month __ Year ____

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V128	ZA2011A_0422	Province of previous residence	discrete	numeric	P-11 Since 2001 Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Yes 2. No 3. Born after October 2001 but never moved. 4. Born after October 2001 and moved. If 1 or 3, go to P-12 P-11b Province of previous residence In which province did [the person] live before moving to this place? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 01. Western Cape 02. Eastern Cape 03. Northern Cape 04. Free State 05. Kwa-Zulu Natal 06. North West 07. Gauteng 08. Mpumalanga 09. Limpopo 10. Outside South Africa 11. Do not know If 10, go to P-12
V129	ZA2011A_0486	District of previous residence	discrete	numeric	P-11 Since 2001 Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Yes 2. No 3. Born after October 2001 but never moved. 4. Born after October 2001 and moved. If 1 or 3, go to P-12 P-11c Municipality/ Magisterial district of previous residence In which municipality or magisterial district did [the person] live before moving to this place? Use capital letters only. ____
V130	ZA2011A_0423	Municipality of previous residence	discrete	numeric	P-11 Since 2001 Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Yes 2. No 3. Born after October 2001 but never moved. 4. Born after October 2001 and moved. If 1 or 3, go to P-12 P-11c Municipality/ Magisterial district of previous residence In which municipality or magisterial district did [the person] live before moving to this place? Use capital letters only. ____
V131	ZA2011A_0424	Difficulty seeing	discrete	numeric	Section C: General health and Functioning Ask of everyone listed in the flap. P-12 Health and functioning Does [the person have difficulty in the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box. _ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses _ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid _ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others) _ D. Walking or climbing stairs _ E. Remembering or concentrating _ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Cannot do at all 5. Do not know 6. Cannot yet be determined
V132	ZA2011A_0425	Difficulty hearing	discrete	numeric	Section C: General health and Functioning Ask of everyone listed in the flap. P-12 Health and functioning Does [the person have difficulty in the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box. _ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses _ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid _ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others) _ D. Walking or climbing stairs _ E. Remembering or concentrating _ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Cannot do at all 5. Do not know 6. Cannot yet be determined
V133	ZA2011A_0426	Difficulty communicating	discrete	numeric	Section C: General health and Functioning Ask of everyone listed in the flap. P-12 Health and functioning Does [the person have difficulty in the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box. _ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses _ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid _ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others) _ D. Walking or climbing stairs _ E. Remembering or concentrating _ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Cannot do at all 5. Do not know 6. Cannot yet be determined
V134	ZA2011A_0427	Difficulty walking or climbing stairs	discrete	numeric	Section C: General health and Functioning Ask of everyone listed in the flap. P-12 Health and functioning Does [the person have difficulty in the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box. _ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses _ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid _ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others) _ D. Walking or climbing stairs _ E. Remembering or concentrating _ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Cannot do at all 5. Do not know 6. Cannot yet be determined

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V135	ZA2011A_0428	Difficulty remembering or concentrating	discrete	numeric	Section C: General health and Functioning Ask of everyone listed in the flap. P-12 Health and functioning Does [the person have difficulty in the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box. _ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses _ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid _ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others) _ D. Walking or climbing stairs _ E. Remembering or concentrating _ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Cannot do at all 5. Do not know 6. Cannot yet be determined
V136	ZA2011A_0429	Difficulty with self care such as washing, dressing or feeding	discrete	numeric	Section C: General health and Functioning Ask of everyone listed in the flap. P-12 Health and functioning Does [the person have difficulty in the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box. _ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses _ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid _ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others) _ D. Walking or climbing stairs _ E. Remembering or concentrating _ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Cannot do at all 5. Do not know 6. Cannot yet be determined
V137	ZA2011A_0430	Uses eyeglasses	discrete	numeric	P-13 Assistive devices and medication Does [the person] use any of the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box. _ A. Eye glasses _ B. Hearing aid _ C. Walking stick or frame _ D. A wheelchair _ E. Chronic medication 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know
V138	ZA2011A_0431	Uses hearing aid	discrete	numeric	P-13 Assistive devices and medication Does [the person] use any of the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box. _ A. Eye glasses _ B. Hearing aid _ C. Walking stick or frame _ D. A wheelchair _ E. Chronic medication 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know
V139	ZA2011A_0432	Uses walking stick or frame	discrete	numeric	P-13 Assistive devices and medication Does [the person] use any of the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box. _ A. Eye glasses _ B. Hearing aid _ C. Walking stick or frame _ D. A wheelchair _ E. Chronic medication 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know
V140	ZA2011A_0433	Uses wheelchair	discrete	numeric	P-13 Assistive devices and medication Does [the person] use any of the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box. _ A. Eye glasses _ B. Hearing aid _ C. Walking stick or frame _ D. A wheelchair _ E. Chronic medication 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know
V141	ZA2011A_0434	Uses chronic medication	discrete	numeric	P-13 Assistive devices and medication Does [the person] use any of the following? Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box. _ A. Eye glasses _ B. Hearing aid _ C. Walking stick or frame _ D. A wheelchair _ E. Chronic medication 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know
V142	ZA2011A_0435	Mother alive	discrete	numeric	P-14 Mother alive Is [the person]'s own biological mother still alive? Mark the appropriate circle with an X If 2-3, go to P-15. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know
V143	ZA2011A_0436	Person number of mother	discrete	numeric	P-14a Mother person number Who in this household is [the person]'s biological mother? If the person's mother does not reside in the household (not listed on the flap), write 98. Note: Refer to person number on flap e.g. 02 _ _
V144	ZA2011A_0437	Father alive	discrete	numeric	P-14 Father alive Is [the person]'s own biological father still alive? Mark the appropriate circle with an X If 2-3, go to P-16. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know
V145	ZA2011A_0438	Person number of father	discrete	numeric	P-14a Father person number Who in this household is [the person]'s biological father? If the person's father does not reside in the household (not listed on the flap), write 98. Note: Refer to person number on flap e.g. 02 _ _

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V146	ZA2011A_0439	Annual household income category	discrete	numeric	P-16 Income category What is the income category that best describes the gross monthly income or annual income of [the person] before deductions and including all sources of income? Gross income should include all sources of income e.g. Social grant, UIF, remittances, rentals, investments, sales or products, services, etc. Monthly 01. No income 02. R1 - R400 03. R401 - R800 04. R801 - R1 600 05. R1 601 - R3 200 06. R3 201 - R6 400 07. R6 401 - R12 800 08. R12 801 - R25 600 09. R25 601 - R51 200 10. R51 201 - R102 400 11. R102 401 - R204 800 12. R204 801 and more Annual 01. No income 02. R1 - R4 800 03. R4 801 - R9 600 04. R9 601 - R19 200 05. R19 201 - R38 400 06. R38 401 - R76 800 07. R76 801 - R153 600 08. R153 601 - R307 200 09. R307 201 - R614 400 10. R614 401 - R1 228 800 11. R1 228 801 - R2 457 600 12. R2 457 601 and more
V147	ZA2011A_0440	Currently attends school	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-17 School Attendance Does [the person] presently attend an educational institution? Mark the appropriate circle with an X Attendance includes all part-time, full-time studies, whether in person or as a distance learner. If 2-3, go to P-20. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know.
V148	ZA2011A_0441	Educational institution type	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-18 Educational institution Which of the following educational institutions does [the person] attend? Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _ 1. Pre-school (including day care, crche, pre-primary, ECD center) 2. School (including Grade R learners who attend a formal school) 3. Adult Basic Education and Training Learning Centre (ABET Centre) 4. Literacy classes (e.g. Kha Ri Gude, SANLI) 5. Higher Educational Institution (University/University of Technology) 6. Further Education and Training College (FET) 7. Other College 8. Home based education/home schooling
V149	ZA2011A_0442	Public or private institution	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-19 Public or private Is the institution that [the person] attending public or private? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Public (Government) 2. Private (Independent) 3. Do not know
V150	ZA2011A_0443	Highest level of education	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-20 Level of education What is the highest level of education that [the person] has completed? Read out: Diploma or certificate should have been at least six months study duration full-time or equivalent. Write the appropriate code in the box __ 98. No schooling 00. Grade 0 01. Grade 1/Sub A 02. Grade 2/Sub B 03. Grade 3/Std 1/ABET 1(Kha Ri Gude, SANLI) 04. Grade 4/Std 2 05. Grade 5/Std 3 / ABET 2 06. Grade 6/Std 4 07. Grade 7/Std 5 / ABET 3 If 98 or 00-07, go to P-22. 08. Grade 8/Std 6 / Form 1 09. Grade 9/Std 7/Form 2/ 10. Grade 10/Std 8/Form 3 11. Grade 11/Std 9/Form 4 12. Grade 12/Std 10 /Form 5 If 08-12, go to P-23. 13. NTC I/N1/ NIC/(V) Level 2 14. NTCII/N2/ NIC/(V) Level 3 15. NTCIII/N3/NIC/(V) Level 4 16. N4/NTC 4 17. N5/NTC 5 18. N6/NTC 6 19. Certificate with less than Grade 12/ Std10 20. Diploma with less than Grade 12/Std 10 21. Certificate with Grade 12/Std 10 22. Diploma with Grade 12/Std 10 23. Higher Diploma 24. Post Higher Diploma (Masters, Doctoral Diploma) 25. Bachelor's degree 26. Bachelor's degree and Post graduate diploma 27. Honours degree 28. Higher degree (Masters/PhD) 29. Other If 13-29, go to P-21.

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V151	ZA2011A_0444	Field of education	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-21 Field of education in which field is [the person?s] highest post-school qualification? Write the appropriate code in the box __ 01. Agriculture or Renewable Natural Resources 02. Architecture or Environmental Design 03. Arts, Visual or Performing 04. Business, Commerce or Management Sciences 05. Communication 06. Computer Sciences 07. Education, Training or Development 08. Engineering or Engineering Technology 09. Health Care or Health Sciences 10. Home Economics 11. Industrial Arts, Traders or Technology 12. Languages, Linguistics or Literature 13. Law 14. Libraries or Museums 15. Life Sciences or Physical Sciences 16. Mathematical Sciences 17. Military Sciences 18. Philosophy, Religion or Theology 19. Physical Education or Leisure 20. Psychology 21. Public Administration or Social Services 22. Social Sciences or Social Studies Further education and training fields of education 23. Management 24. Marketing 25. Information Technology and Computer Science 26. Finance, Economics and Accounting 27. Office Administration 28. Electrical Infrastructure 29. Civil Engineering and Building 30. Engineering 31. Primary Agriculture 32. Hospitality 33. Tourism 34. Safety in society 35. Mechatronics 36. Education and Development 37. Other Any response, go to P-23.
V152	ZA2011A_0445	Difficulty writing name	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-22 Literacy Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following? Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box. _ A. Writing his/her name _ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language _ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms) _ D. Writing a letter in any language _ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something _ F. Reading road signs 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Unable to do 5. Do not know
V153	ZA2011A_0446	Difficulty reading	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-22 Literacy Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following? Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box. _ A. Writing his/her name _ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language _ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms) _ D. Writing a letter in any language _ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something _ F. Reading road signs 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Unable to do 5. Do not know
V154	ZA2011A_0447	Difficulty filling in form	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-22 Literacy Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following? Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box. _ A. Writing his/her name _ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language _ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms) _ D. Writing a letter in any language _ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something _ F. Reading road signs 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Unable to do 5. Do not know
V155	ZA2011A_0448	Difficulty writing a letter in any language	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-22 Literacy Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following? Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box. _ A. Writing his/her name _ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language _ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms) _ D. Writing a letter in any language _ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something _ F. Reading road signs 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Unable to do 5. Do not know

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V156	ZA2011A_0449	Difficulty calculating change	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-22 Literacy Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following? Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box. _ A. Writing his/her name _ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language _ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms) _ D. Writing a letter in any language _ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something _ F. Reading road signs 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Unable to do 5. Do not know
V157	ZA2011A_0450	Difficulty reading road signs	discrete	numeric	Section E: Education Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap. P-22 Literacy Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following? Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box. _ A. Writing his/her name _ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language _ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms) _ D. Writing a letter in any language _ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something _ F. Reading road signs 1. No difficulty 2. Some difficulty 3. A lot of difficulty 4. Unable to do 5. Do not know
V158	ZA2011A_0451	Worked for pay (even only one hour) during last 7 days	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a
V159	ZA2011A_0452	Ran or performed any kind of business (even only for one hour) during last 7 days	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a
V160	ZA2011A_0453	Helped without being paid for business run by her or his household during last 7 days	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V161	ZA2011A_0454	Temporary absence from work in the last 7 days	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a P-24 Temporary absence from work Even though [the person] did not do any work for pay, profit or did not help without pay in a household business in the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October, did he/she have a paid job or business that he/she would definitely return to? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1, go to P-29a
V162	ZA2011A_0455	Looked for job or tried to start a business in the 4 last weeks	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a P-25 Looking for work In the four weeks before 10 October was [the person] looking for any kind of job or trying to start any kind of business? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1, go to P-28
V163	ZA2011A_0456	Would have liked to work or start a business in the last 7 days	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a P-26 Liked to work Would (name) have liked to work in the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 2 or 3, go to P-32

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V164	ZA2011A_0457	Reasons for not working in the last 7 days	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a P-27 Reasons for not working What was the main reason for not trying to find work or starting a business in the last four weeks before 10 October? Write the appropriate code in the box __ 01. Awaiting the season for work 02. Waiting to be recalled to former job 03. Health reasons 04. Pregnancy 05. Disabled or unable to work (handicapped) 06. Housewife/homemaker (family considerations/child care) 07. Undergoing training to help find work 08. No jobs available in the area 09. Lack of money to pay for transport to look for work 10. Unable to find work requiring his/her skills 11. Lost hope of finding any kind of work 12. No transport available 13. Scholar or student 14. Retired 15. Too old/young to work 16. Did not want to work 17. Other
V165	ZA2011A_0458	Available to start work in the last 7 days	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a P-28 Available to work If a suitable job had been offered or circumstances had allowed, would [the person] have been able to start work or a business in the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know Any response, go to P-32
V166	ZA2011A_0459	Sector	discrete	numeric	Section F: Employment Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap. P-23 Employment status In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23a Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23b Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ? P-23c Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a P-31 Type of sector Is [the person]'s place of work? Write the appropriate code in the box. 1. In the formal sector 2. In the informal sector 3. Private household 4. Do not know

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V167	ZA2011A_0460	Live births	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-32 Children ever born Has [the person] ever given birth to a live child, even if the child died soon after birth? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 2 or 3, go to H-01
V168	ZA2011A_0461	Age at first birth	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-33 Age at first birth At what age did [the person] have their first born child? __
V169	ZA2011A_0462	Number of male children ever born	discrete	numeric	Number of male children ever born
V170	ZA2011A_0463	Number of female children ever born	discrete	numeric	Number of female children ever born
V171	ZA2011A_0464	Number of children ever born	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-34 Total children ever born How many children has [the person] ever had that were born alive? __
V172	ZA2011A_0466	Month of last child's birth	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-38 Last child born When was [the person's] last child born, even if the child died soon after birth? __
V173	ZA2011A_0467	Year of last child's birth	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-38 Last child born When was [the person's] last child born, even if the child died soon after birth? __
V174	ZA2011A_0468	Sex of last child born	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-39 Sex of last child born Is [the person's] last child born male or female? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Male 2. Female 3. Do not know
V175	ZA2011A_0469	Last child born still alive	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-40 Last child born alive Is [the person's] last child born still alive? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No 3. Do not know If 1 or 3, go to H-01
V176	ZA2011A_0471	Month of last child's death	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-41 Date of death of the last child born When did [the person's] last child born die? Day __ Month __ Year ____
V177	ZA2011A_0472	Year of last child's death	discrete	numeric	Section G: Fertility Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap P-41 Date of death of the last child born When did [the person's] last child born die? Day __ Month __ Year ____
V178	ZA2011A_0476	Region of birth (derived)	discrete	numeric	P-08 Country of birth In which country was [the person] born? Use capital letters only. ____
V179	ZA2011A_0477	Province of previous residence (derived)	discrete	numeric	P-11 Since 2001 Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 1. Yes 2. No 3. Born after October 2001 but never moved. 4. Born after October 2001 and moved. If 1 or 3, go to P-12 P-11b Province of previous residence In which province did [the person] live before moving to this place? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 01. Western Cape 02. Eastern Cape 03. Northern Cape 04. Free State 05. Kwa-Zulu Natal 06. North West 07. Gauteng 08. Mpumalanga 09. Limpopo 10. Outside South Africa 11. Do not know If 10, go to P-12
V180	ZA2011A_0478	Province of usual residence (derived)	discrete	numeric	P-10 Usual residence Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No If 1, go to P-11 P-10a Province of usual residence In which province does [the person] usually live? Write the appropriate code in the box _ 01. Western Cape 02. Eastern Cape 03. Northern Cape 04. Free State 05. Kwa-Zulu Natal 06. North West 07. Gauteng 08. Mpumalanga 09. Limpopo 10. Outside South Africa 11. Do not know If 10, go to P-11
V181	ZA2011A_0479	Labour market status (derived)	discrete	numeric	Labour market status (derived)
V182	ZA2011A_0480	Official employment status (derived)	discrete	numeric	Official employment status (derived)

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V183	ZA2011A_0481	Expanded employment status (derived)	discrete	numeric	Expanded employment status (derived)
V184	ZA2011A_0482	Grouped level of education (derived)	discrete	numeric	Grouped level of education (derived)
V185	ZA2011A_0483	Any births in past 12 months (derived)	discrete	numeric	Any births in past 12 months (derived)
V186	ZA2011A_0484	Indicator for urban or rural residence	discrete	numeric	Indicator for urban or rural residence
V187	ZA2011A_0485	Person weight	contin	numeric	Person weight
V188	ZA2011A_0487	Municipality of usual residence	discrete	numeric	P-10 Usual residence Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month? Mark the appropriate circle with an X. 1. Yes 2. No If 1, go to P-11 P-10b Municipality/ Magisterial district of usual residence In which municipality or magisterial district does [the person] usually live? Use capital letters only. ____
V189	PERNUM	Person number	contin	numeric	
V190	MOMLOC	Mother's location in household	contin	numeric	
V191	POPLOC	Father's location in household	contin	numeric	
V192	SPLOC	Spouse's location in household	contin	numeric	
V193	PARRULE	Rule for linking parent	discrete	numeric	
V194	SPRULE	Rule for linking spouse	discrete	numeric	
V195	STEPMOM	Probable stepmother	discrete	numeric	
V196	STEPPOP	Probable stepfather	discrete	numeric	
V197	POLYMAL	Man with more than one wife linked	discrete	numeric	
V198	POLY2ND	Woman is second or higher order wife	discrete	numeric	
V199	FAMUNIT	Family unit membership	contin	numeric	
V200	FAMSIZE	Number of own family members in household	discrete	numeric	
V201	NCHILD	Number of own children in household	discrete	numeric	
V202	NCHLT5	Number of own children under age 5 in household	discrete	numeric	
V203	ELDCH	Age of eldest own child in household	discrete	numeric	
V204	YNGCH	Age of youngest own child in household	discrete	numeric	
V205	RELATE	Relationship to household head [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V206	RELATED	Relationship to household head [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V207	AGE	Age	discrete	numeric	

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V208	SEX	Sex	discrete	numeric	
V209	MARST	Marital status [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V210	MARSTD	Marital status [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V211	CONSENS	Consensual union	discrete	numeric	
V212	CHBORN	Children ever born	discrete	numeric	
V213	MIGZA1	Province of previous residence, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V214	POLYGAM	Polygamous union	discrete	numeric	
V215	BPLZA	Province of birth, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V216	INCTOT	Total income	contin	numeric	
V217	BIRTHYR	Year of birth	discrete	numeric	
V218	BIRTHMO	Month of birth	discrete	numeric	
V219	CHBORNF	Number of female children ever born	discrete	numeric	
V220	CHBORNM	Number of male children ever born	discrete	numeric	
V221	MORTMOT	Mortality status of mother	discrete	numeric	
V222	MORTFAT	Mortality status of father	discrete	numeric	
V223	CITIZEN	Citizenship	discrete	numeric	
V224	YRIMM	Year of immigration	discrete	numeric	
V225	YRSIMM	Years since immigrated	discrete	numeric	
V226	YRSIMM2	Years since immigrated, categorized	discrete	numeric	
V227	RACE	Race or color	discrete	numeric	
V228	LANGZA1	Language spoken at home, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V229	LANGZA2	Second language spoken, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V230	NATIVITY	Nativity status	discrete	numeric	
V231	LASTBYR	Year of last birth	discrete	numeric	
V232	LASTBSEX	Sex of last birth	discrete	numeric	
V233	LASTBMO	Month of last birth	discrete	numeric	
V234	BIRTHSLYR	Number of births last year	discrete	numeric	
V235	LASTBMORT	Mortality status of last birth	discrete	numeric	
V236	CHDEADYR	Year of death of the last child born	discrete	numeric	
V237	CHDEADMO	Month of death of the last child born	discrete	numeric	

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V238	AGE2	Age, grouped into intervals	discrete	numeric	
V239	SCHOOL	School attendance	discrete	numeric	
V240	EDUCZA	Educational attainment, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V241	EMPSTAT	Activity status (employment status) [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V242	EMPSTATD	Activity status (employment status) [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V243	DISEMP	Employment disability	discrete	numeric	
V244	DISBLND	Blind or vision-impaired	discrete	numeric	
V245	DISDEAF	Deaf or hearing-impaired	discrete	numeric	
V246	DISMUTE	Mute or speech impaired	discrete	numeric	
V247	DISLOWR	Disability affecting lower extremities	discrete	numeric	
V248	DISCARE	Personal care limitation	discrete	numeric	
V249	DISABLED	Disability status	discrete	numeric	
V250	MIGRATEP	Migration status, previous residence	discrete	numeric	
V251	PERWT	Person weight	contin	numeric	
V252	SPEAKENG	Speaks English	discrete	numeric	
V253	BPLCOUNTRY	Country of birth	discrete	numeric	
V254	YRSCHOOL	Years of schooling	discrete	numeric	
V255	EDATTAIN	Educational attainment, international recode [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V256	EDATTAIND	Educational attainment, international recode [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V257	YEARP	Year [person version]	contin	numeric	
V258	SAMPLEP	IPUMS sample identifier [person version]	contin	numeric	
V259	SERIAL	Household serial number [person version]	contin	numeric	
V260	COUNTRYP	Country [person version]	contin	numeric	
V261	RECTYPEP	Record type [person version]	discrete	character	

Dwelling number (ZA2011A_0001)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 7
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household dwelling number.

Universe

All records

Literal question

Dwelling number

Household number (within dwelling) (ZA2011A_0002)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-1

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household number (within a dwelling).

Universe

All records

Literal question

Household number (within dwelling)

Number of persons in household (ZA2011A_0006)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-35

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of persons in a household.

Universe

All records

Literal question

Number of persons in household

Dwelling created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household (ZA2011A_0016)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Dwelling created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household (ZA2011A_0016)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

This variable indicates that the dwelling was created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household.

Universe

All records

Literal question

Dwelling created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household

Questionnaire type (ZA2011A_0021)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-3	

Description

This variable indicates the type of household questionnaire.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Questionnaire type

Serial number for questionnaire (ZA2011A_0022)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 11	
Decimals: 0	

Description

This variable indicates the serial number for the questionnaire.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Serial number for questionnaire

Type of living quarters (ZA2011A_0023)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Type of living quarters (ZA2011A_0023)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-3

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household type of living quarters.

Universe

All households

Literal question

H-01 Type of living quarters

What is the type of these living quarters?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Housing unit
2. Residential Hotel
3. Home for the aged
4. Converted hostel
5. Other

If 2-4, Go to H-07

[Question H-01 through M-05 were asked of households in housing units or converted hostels]

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Type of dwelling (for main dwelling) (ZA2011A_0024)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of dwelling (for the main dwelling).

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Type of dwelling (for main dwelling) (ZA2011A_0024)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-01 Type of living quarters

What is the type of these living quarters?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Housing unit
2. Residential Hotel
3. Home for the aged
4. Converted hostel
5. Other

If 2-4, Go to H-07

[Question H-01 through M-05 were asked of households in housing units or converted hostels]

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Type of dwelling (for other dwelling) (ZA2011A_0025)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of dwelling (for other dwelling).

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-01 Type of living quarters

What is the type of these living quarters?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Housing unit
2. Residential Hotel
3. Home for the aged
4. Converted hostel
5. Other

If 2-4, Go to H-07

[Question H-01 through M-05 were asked of households in housing units or converted hostels]

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Roof material (ZA2011A_0026)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household's roof material.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-02a Construction material

What is the main material used for the construction of the roof and wall of the MAIN dwelling?

Write the appropriate code in the boxes.

Roof __

Wall __

01. Brick
02. Cement block/Concrete
03. Corrugated iron/zinc
04. Wood
05. Plastic
06. Cardboard
07. Mud and cement mix
08. Wattle and daub
09. Tile
10. Mud
11. Thatch/Grass
12. Asbestos
13. Other

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Wall material (ZA2011A_0027)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household's walls material.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Wall material (ZA2011A_0027)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-02a Construction material

What is the main material used for the construction of the roof and wall of the MAIN dwelling?

Write the appropriate code in the boxes.

Roof __

Wall __

01. Brick
02. Cement block/Concrete
03. Corrugated iron/zinc
04. Wood
05. Plastic
06. Cardboard
07. Mud and cement mix
08. Wattle and daub
09. Tile
10. Mud
11. Thatch/Grass
12. Asbestos
13. Other

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Number of dining rooms (ZA2011A_0028)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of dining rooms in a household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-03 Rooms

How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

Dining rooms __
Living rooms __
Dining/Living room __
Bedrooms __
Study rooms __
One room with multiple uses __
Other rooms __
Total rooms __

Exclude bathrooms and kitchen.

Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.

Number of dining rooms (ZA2011A_0028)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Number of living rooms (ZA2011A_0029)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of living rooms in a household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-03 Rooms

How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

Dining rooms __
Living rooms __
Dining/Living room __
Bedrooms __
Study rooms __
One room with multiple uses __
Other rooms __
Total rooms __

Exclude bathrooms and kitchen.

Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Number of dining or living rooms (ZA2011A_0030)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Number of dining or living rooms (ZA2011A_0030)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

This variable indicates the number of dining or living rooms in a household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-03 Rooms

How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

Dining rooms __
 Living rooms __
 Dining/Living room __
 Bedrooms __
 Study rooms __
 One room with multiple uses __
 Other rooms __
 Total rooms __

Exclude bathrooms and kitchen.

Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Number of bedrooms (ZA2011A_0031)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 1
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of bedrooms in a household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-03 Rooms

How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

Dining rooms __
 Living rooms __
 Dining/Living room __
 Bedrooms __
 Study rooms __
 One room with multiple uses __
 Other rooms __
 Total rooms __

Exclude bathrooms and kitchen.

Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.

Interviewer instructions

Number of bedrooms (ZA2011A_0031)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Number of study rooms (ZA2011A_0032)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of study rooms in a household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-03 Rooms

How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

Dining rooms __
Living rooms __
Dining/Living room __
Bedrooms __
Study rooms __
One room with multiple uses __
Other rooms __
Total rooms __

Exclude bathrooms and kitchen.

Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Number of multi-use rooms (ZA2011A_0033)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of multi-use rooms in a household.

Number of multi-use rooms (ZA2011A_0033)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-03 Rooms

How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

Dining rooms __
 Living rooms __
 Dining/Living room __
 Bedrooms __
 Study rooms __
 One room with multiple uses __
 Other rooms __
 Total rooms __

Exclude bathrooms and kitchen.

Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Number of rooms used for other purposes (ZA2011A_0034)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 1
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of rooms used for other purposes in a household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-03 Rooms

How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

Dining rooms __
 Living rooms __
 Dining/Living room __
 Bedrooms __
 Study rooms __
 One room with multiple uses __
 Other rooms __
 Total rooms __

Exclude bathrooms and kitchen.

Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.

Interviewer instructions

Number of rooms used for other purposes (ZA2011A_0034)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Total number of rooms (ZA2011A_0035)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the total number of rooms in a household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-03 Rooms

How many rooms are there in the main dwelling of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

Dining rooms __
Living rooms __
Dining/Living room __
Bedrooms __
Study rooms __
One room with multiple uses __
Other rooms __
Total rooms __

Exclude bathrooms and kitchen.

Include garages if some members of the household are living in them.

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Tenure status (ZA2011A_0036)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the tenure status of a household.

Tenure status (ZA2011A_0036)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-04 Tenure status

What is the tenure status of this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _

1. Rented
2. Owned but not yet paid off
3. Occupied rent-free
4. Owned and fully paid off
5. Other

Refers to the main dwelling structure only and not to the land that it is situated on.

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Water supply (ZA2011A_0037)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household's type of water supply.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-07 Access to piped water

In which way does this household mainly get piped water for household use?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _

1. Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling
2. Piped (tap) water inside the yard
3. Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance less than 200m from dwelling
4. Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance between 200m and 500m from dwelling
5. Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance between 500m and 1000m (1 km) from dwelling
6. Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance greater than 1000m (1 km) from dwelling
7. No access to piped water

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Water source (ZA2011A_0038)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household's water source.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-08 Source of water

What is this household's main source of water for household use?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _

1. Regional/local water scheme (operated by municipality or other water services provider)
2. Borehole
3. Spring
4. Rain water tank
5. Dam/pool/stagnant water
6. River/stream
7. Water vendor
8. Water tanker
9. Other

If 2-9, Go to H-10

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Interruption in water supply in last 12 months (ZA2011A_0039)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that the household has experienced an interruption in the water supply during the last 12 months.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels not supplied by a regional or local water scheme

Literal question

H-09 Reliability of water supply

In the last 12 months, has this household had any interruptions in piped water supply?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No

If 2, Go to H-10

Interruption in water supply in last 12 months (ZA2011A_0039)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Interruption of water supply lasted more than two days (ZA2011A_0040)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that the household interruption of water supply lasted for more than two days.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels that had any interruptions of water supplied by regional or local schemes

Literal question

H-09a Reliability of water supply

Did any specific interruption(s) in piped water supply last longer than two days?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No

If 2, Go to H-10

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Alternative water source (ZA2011A_0041)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that the household has an alternative water source.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels that had interruptions of water supplied by regional or local schemes that lasted more than 2 days

Alternative water source (ZA2011A_0041)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Literal question

H-09b Alternative water source

What alternative water source did the household use during water supply interruption?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _

1. Borehole
2. Spring
3. Rain water tank
4. Dam/pool/stagnant water
5. River/stream
6. Water vendor
7. Water tanker
8. Other
0. None

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Toilet (ZA2011A_0042)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of toilet that the household uses.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-10 Toilet facilities

What is the main type of toilet facility used by this household?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _

1. Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)
2. Flush toilet (with septic tank)
3. Chemical toilet
4. Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)
5. Pit toilet without ventilation
6. Bucket toilet
7. Other
0. None

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Fuel for cooking (ZA2011A_0043)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the fuel used for cooking.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-11 Energy/fuel

What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, heating and lighting?

Write the appropriate code in the box.

Cooking _
Heating _
Lighting _

1. Electricity
2. Gas
3. Paraffin
4. Wood
5. Coal
6. Candles
7. Animal dung
8. Solar
9. Other
0. None

Note:

Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting

Candles (6) cannot be used for heating or cooking

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Fuel for heating (ZA2011A_0044)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the fuel used for heating in the household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Fuel for heating (ZA2011A_0044)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Literal question

H-11 Energy/fuel

What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, heating and lighting?

Write the appropriate code in the box.

Cooking _
Heating _
Lighting _

1. Electricity
2. Gas
3. Paraffin
4. Wood
5. Coal
6. Candles
7. Animal dung
8. Solar
9. Other
0. None

Note:

Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting

Candles (6) cannot be used for heating or cooking

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Fuel for lighting (ZA2011A_0045)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the fuel used for lighting in the household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Fuel for lighting (ZA2011A_0045)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-11 Energy/fuel

What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, heating and lighting?
Write the appropriate code in the box.

Cooking _
Heating _
Lighting _

1. Electricity
2. Gas
3. Paraffin
4. Wood
5. Coal
6. Candles
7. Animal dung
8. Solar
9. Other
0. None

Note:

Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting
Candles (6) cannot be used for heating or cooking

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Refuse disposal (ZA2011A_0046)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household's method for refuse.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-12 Refuse disposal

How is the refuse or rubbish from this household mainly disposed of?
Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _

1. Removed by local authority/private company at least once a week
2. Removed by local authority/private company less often
3. Communal refuse dump
4. Own refuse dump
5. No rubbish disposal
6. Other

Interviewer instructions

Refuse disposal (ZA2011A_0046)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Refrigerator (ZA2011A_0047)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a refrigerator.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Electric or gas stove (ZA2011A_0048)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Electric or gas stove (ZA2011A_0048)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has an electric or gas stove.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Vacuum cleaner (ZA2011A_0049)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a vacuum cleaner.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Vacuum cleaner (ZA2011A_0049)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Washing machine (ZA2011A_0050)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a washing machine.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Washing machine (ZA2011A_0050)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Computer (ZA2011A_0051)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a computer.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Computer (ZA2011A_0051)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Satellite television (ZA2011A_0052)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has satellite television.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Satellite television (ZA2011A_0052)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

DVD player (ZA2011A_0053)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a DVD player.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

DVD player (ZA2011A_0053)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Motorcar (ZA2011A_0054)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a motorcar.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Motorcar (ZA2011A_0054)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Television (ZA2011A_0055)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a television.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Television (ZA2011A_0055)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Radio (ZA2011A_0056)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a radio.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Radio (ZA2011A_0056)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Landline telephone (ZA2011A_0057)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a landline telephone.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Landline telephone (ZA2011A_0057)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Cell phone (ZA2011A_0058)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a cell phone.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Cell phone (ZA2011A_0058)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Mail post box or bag (ZA2011A_0059)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has a mail post box or mail bag.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Mail post box or bag (ZA2011A_0059)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Mail delivered at residence (ZA2011A_0060)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has mail delivered at residence.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Mail delivered at residence (ZA2011A_0060)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

H-13 Household goods and services

Does this household own any of the following in working order?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes

1. Yes
2. No

- ☐ Refrigerator
- ☐ Electric/gas stove
- ☐ Vacuum cleaner
- ☐ Washing machine
- ☐ Computer
- ☐ Music center
- ☐ DVD Player
- ☐ Motorcar
- ☐ Television
- ☐ Radio
- ☐ Landline/Telephone
- ☐ Cell phone
- ☐ Mail Post box/bag
- ☐ Mail box at residence

Interviewer instructions

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Access to internet (ZA2011A_0061)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has access to the internet.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

H-13a Access to internet

How does this household mainly access internet?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _

1. From home
2. From Cell phone
3. From elsewhere other than home
4. No access to internet

Interviewer instructions

Access to internet (ZA2011A_0061)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

10. Section H: Housing (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information collected here is important to all users such as Eskom, Telkom, etc. as it can be used to monitor progress regarding service delivery issues (or lack thereof).

This section must be completed for every household.

H-02: Other dwelling refers to another structure that the household occupies other than the main house/dwelling.

Any deaths in past 12 months (ZA2011A_0062)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the household has experienced any deaths during the past 12 months.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

M-00 Death occurred

Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months (between 9 October 2010 and 9 October 2011)?
Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 2 or 3, Questionnaire completed

Interviewer instructions

11. Section I: Mortality (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of mortality in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed for every household.

Number of deaths (ZA2011A_0063)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of deaths that the household has experienced during the past 12 months.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels in which any deaths in past 12 months occurred

Literal question

Number of deaths (ZA2011A_0063)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

M-00 Death occurred

Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months (between 9 October 2010 and 9 October 2011)?
Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 2 or 3, Questionnaire completed

M-00a Number of deaths

How many members of the household passed away in the last 12 months (between 9 October 2010 and 9 October 2011)?

--

Interviewer instructions

11. Section I: Mortality (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of mortality in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed for every household.

Age of household head (ZA2011A_0067)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 10-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the age of the household head.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Age of household head

Race or ethnicity of household head (ZA2011A_0068)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the race or ethnicity of the household head.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Race or ethnicity of household head

Sex of household head (ZA2011A_0069)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the sex of the household head.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Sex of household head

Annual income of household head in Rand (ZA2011A_0070)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 7
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9999999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the annual income of the household head in Rand (values are the midpoint in the given income range).

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Annual income of household head in Rand

Employment status of household head (ZA2011A_0071)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the employment status of the household head.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Employment status of household head

Majority population group in the household (ZA2011A_0073)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Majority population group in the household (ZA2011A_0073)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the population group of the majority of individuals in the household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Majority population group in the household

Annual household income category (ZA2011A_0074)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household annual income, as a category.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Annual household income category

Urban-rural status (ZA2011A_0075)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of urban or rural location of the household.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Urban-rural status

Household weight (ZA2011A_0076)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Household weight (ZA2011A_0076)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 11
Decimals: 9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the household weight.

Universe

Households in housing units or converted hostels

Literal question

Household weight

Number of mortality records (ZA2011A_0077)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicate the number of mortality records.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Number of mortality records

Record type (RECTYPE)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: character
Width: 1

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

RECTYPE identifies the type of record for the case: household or person.

NOTE: RECTYPE is an alphabetic (character string) variable with a value of 'H' for household records and 'P' for person records. RECTYPE will not appear as a variable in the default rectangular extracts produced by the data extract system. It is only available in hierarchical extracts, to distinguish between the two record types.

IPUMS sample identifier (SAMPLE)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

IPUMS sample identifier (SAMPLE)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 9
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 32197001-894201001

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

SAMPLE identifies the IPUMS sample from which the case is drawn. Each sample receives a unique 9-digit code. The code is structured as follows:

The first 3 digits are the ISO/UN codes used in COUNTRY

The next 4 digits are the year of the census/survey

The final 2 digits identify the sample within the year. For the last two digits, censuses or large census-like surveys have a value "0" (e.g., 01) in the second-to-last digit, household surveys have a value of "2" (e.g., 21), and employment surveys have a value of "4" (e.g., 41).

Year (YEAR)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 4
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 1960-2011

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

YEAR gives the year in which the census was taken.

Household serial number (SERIAL)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
 Format: numeric
 Width: 10
 Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

Household serial number (SERIAL)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

SERIAL is an identifying number unique to each household in a given sample. All person records are assigned the same serial number as the household record that they follow. (Person records also have their own unique identifiers -- see PERNUM.) The combination of SAMPLE and SERIAL provides a unique identifier for every household in the IPUMS-International database; SAMPLE, SERIAL and PERNUM uniquely identify every person in the database.

SERIAL can be used to identify dwellings in some samples. In these samples, the first 7 digits of SERIAL provide the dwelling number common to all households that were sampled from the same structure. The last three digits give the sequence of the household within the dwelling. The following is a list of samples in which dwellings can be inferred:

Chile 1970, 1992, 2002
 Colombia 1993, 2005
 Costa Rica 1984, 2000
 Cuba 2002
 Dominican Republic 1981, 2002, 2010
 Ecuador 1990, 2001
 Germany 1971
 Hungary 1980, 1990, 2001
 Jamaica 1982, 1991, 2001
 Malaysia 1970, 1991, 2000
 Mexico 1995, 1990, 2000, 2005
 Nigeria 2006
 Panama 2000
 Peru 1993, 2007
 Portugal 1981, 1991, 2001
 Spain 1991
 Uruguay 2011
 Venezuela 1990, 2001
 Vietnam 1989

In all other samples, the last 3 digits are always zeroes.

SERIAL was constructed for IPUMS-International, and has no relation to the serial number in the original datasets.

Automobiles available (AUTOS)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 1
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

AUTOS records whether a member of the household owned or had use of a vehicle and, in many samples, the number of such vehicles.

Clothes washing machine (WASHER)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 1
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

Clothes washing machine (WASHER)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

WASHER indicates whether the household had a clothes washing machine.

Refrigerator (REFRIG)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

REFRIG indicates whether the household had a refrigerator.

Television set (TV)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

TV indicates whether the household had a television.

Radio in household (RADIO)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

RADIO indicates whether the household had a radio.

Head's location in household (HEADLOC)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

HEADLOC gives the person number of the head of household in samples in which persons are organized into households.

South Africa, Municipality (MUNIZA)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 11-984

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MUNIZA identifies the household's municipality within South Africa from 2001 to present. Municipalities are the third level administrative units of the country, after district council. MUNIZA is harmonized by name and does not account for boundary changes over time.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1 and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

1st subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time] (GEOLEV1)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0
Range: 32002-894010

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEOLEV1 indicates the major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The variable incorporates the geographies for every country, to enable cross-national geographic analysis over time. First administrative units in GEOLEV1 have been spatiotemporally harmonized to provide spatially consistent boundaries across samples in each country.

2nd subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time] (GEOLEV2)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 0
Range: 32002001-888888888

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEOLEV2 indicates the second major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The variable incorporates the geographies for every country, to enable cross-national geographic analysis over time. Second administrative units in GEOLEV2 have been spatio-temporally harmonized to provide spatially consistent boundaries across samples in each country.

South Africa, Province 2001 - 2011 [Level 1; consistent boundaries, GIS] (GEO1_ZA)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0
Range: 710001-710999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEO1_ZA identifies the household's province (provinsie) within South Africa from 2001 to present. Provinces are the first level administrative units of the country. GEO1_ZA is spatially harmonized accounting for political boundary changes across census years. Some detail is lost in harmonization; see the comparability discussion. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO1_ZA can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

South Africa, Province 2011 [Level 1, GIS] (GEO1_ZA2011)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEO1_ZA2011 identifies the household's province (provinsie) within South Africa in 2011. Provinces are the first level administrative units of the country. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO1_ZA2011 can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

South Africa, District council 2001 - 2011 [Level 2; consistent boundaries, GIS] (GEO2_ZA)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 0
Range: 710001001-710999999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

South Africa, District council 2001 - 2011 [Level 2; consistent boundaries, GIS] (GEO2_ZA)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

GEO2_ZA identifies the household's district council (also known as district municipality) within South Africa from 2001 to present. District councils are the second level administrative units of the country, after province. GEO2_ZA is spatially harmonized to account for political boundary changes across census years. Some detail is lost in harmonization; see the comparability discussion. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO2_ZA can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level of any country refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

South Africa, District council 2011 [Level 2, GIS] (GEO2_ZA2011)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0
Range: 1001-9047

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEO2_ZA2011 identifies the household's district council (also known as district municipality) within South Africa in 2011. District councils are the second level administrative units of the country, after provinces. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO2_ZA2011 can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level of any country refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

Group quarters (collective dwelling) status (GQ)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GQ identifies households as vacant dwellings, group quarters, or private households. Group quarters -- collective dwellings -- are generally institutions and other group living arrangements such as rooming houses and boarding schools.

Institutions often retain persons under formal supervision or custody, such as correctional institutions, military barracks, asylums, or nursing homes. Educational and religious group dwellings (e.g., boarding schools, convents, monasteries, etc.) are also included in the institutional classification.

Group quarter designations are often useful for understanding the universe of households that answered questions about household characteristics. Censuses will often exclude group quarters from such questions.

Number of unrelated persons (UNREL)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Number of unrelated persons (UNREL)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

UNREL indicates the number of persons in the household who are unrelated to the head.

Urban-rural status (URBAN)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

URBAN indicates whether the household was located in a place designated as urban or as rural.

Water supply (WATSUP)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

WATSUP describes the physical means by which the housing unit receives its water. The primary distinction is whether or not the household had piped (running) water.

Telephone availability (PHONE)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

PHONE indicates the availability of a telephone in the dwelling.

Cellular phone availability (CELL)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Cellular phone availability (CELL)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

CELL indicates the availability of a cellular phone in the household.

Trash disposal (TRASH)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

This variable indicates whether the household's waste or garbage is collected by a sanitation service or disposed of in some other manner.

Number of families in household (NFAMS)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

NFAMS is a constructed variable that indicates the number of families within each household. A "family" is any group of persons related by blood, adoption, or marriage. An unrelated individual within the household is considered a separate family. Thus, a household consisting of a widow and her servant contains two families; a household consisting of a large, multiple-generation extended family with no lodgers or servants would count as a single family.

NFAMS is constructed from information in RELATE (relationship to head) and from the constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father). See those variable descriptions for more detail.

Number of married couples in household (NCOUPLES)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

Number of married couples in household (NCOUPLES)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

NCOUPLES is a constructed variable indicating the number of married/in-union couples within a household.

NCOUPLES is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable SPLOC (spouse's location in the household).

Number of mothers in household (NMOTHERS)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

NMOTHERS is a constructed variable indicating the number of mothers -- of persons of any age -- within a household.

NMOTHERS is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable MOMLOC (mother's location in the household).

Number of fathers in household (NFATHERS)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

NFATHERS is a constructed variable indicating the number of fathers -- of persons of any age -- within a household.

NFATHERS is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable POPLOC (father's location in the household).

Country (COUNTRY)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 32-894

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

COUNTRY gives the country from which the sample was drawn. The codes assigned to each country are those used by the UN Statistics Division and the ISO (International Organization for Standardization).

Electricity (ELECTRIC)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Electricity (ELECTRIC)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

ELECTRIC indicates whether the household had access to electricity.

Ownership of dwelling [general version] (OWNERSHIP)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

OWNERSHIP indicates whether a member of the household owned the housing unit. Households that acquired their unit with a mortgage or other lending arrangement were understood to "own" their unit even if they had not yet completed repayment. For those that did not own their housing unit, several options were possible: renting (from various types of owners), subletting, usufruct, and de facto occupation.

Ownership of dwelling [detailed version] (OWNERSHIPD)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

OWNERSHIP indicates whether a member of the household owned the housing unit. Households that acquired their unit with a mortgage or other lending arrangement were understood to "own" their unit even if they had not yet completed repayment. For those that did not own their housing unit, several options were possible: renting (from various types of owners), subletting, usufruct, and de facto occupation.

Cooking fuel (FUELCOOK)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

FUELCOOK indicates the predominant type of fuel or energy used for cooking.

Fuel for heating (FUELHEAT)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

FUELHEAT indicates the main fuel source for heating the household.

Internet access (INTERNET)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

INTERNET indicates whether or not the household had an internet connection.

Computer (COMPUTER)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

COMPUTER indicates whether the household had a personal computer.

Number of rooms (ROOMS)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

ROOMS indicates the number of rooms occupied by the housing unit.

Number of deaths in household last year (MORTNUM)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Number of deaths in household last year (MORTNUM)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MORTNUM indicates the number of deaths in the household in the past year.

Any deaths in household last year (ANYMORT)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

ANYMORT indicates whether there were any deaths in the household in the past year.

Continent and region of country (REGIONW)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 11-54

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

REGIONW identifies the continent and region of each country.

Number of bedrooms (BEDROOMS)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

BEDROOMS indicates the number of rooms available to members of the household for sleeping.

Subsample number (SUBSAMP)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Subsample number (SUBSAMP)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SUBSAMP allocates each case to one of 100 subsample replicates, randomly numbered from 0 to 99. Each subsample is nationally representative and preserves any stratification of the sample from which it is drawn. Users who need a representative subset of a sample can use SUBSAMP to select their cases. For example, to randomly extract 10% of the cases from a sample, select any 10 of the 100 subsamples.

Toilet (TOILET)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

TOILET indicates whether the household had access to a toilet and, in most cases, whether it was a flush toilet or other type of installation.

Roof material (ROOF)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the dwelling's predominant roofing material.

Household classification (HHTYPE)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

HHTYPE is a constructed variable that describes the composition of households.

HHTYPE is constructed from information in RELATE (relationship to head), from the constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father), and from information on group quarters status, GQ.

Household weight (HHWT)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 8
Decimals: 2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

HHWT indicates the number of households in the population represented by the household in the sample.

For the samples that are truly weighted (see the comparability discussion), HHWT must be used to yield accurate household-level statistics.

NOTE: HHWT has 2 implied decimal places. That is, the last two digits of the eight-digit variable are decimal digits, but there is no actual decimal in the data.

Strata (ZA2011A_0081)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable is the strata identifier for the sample. Strata is a constructed variable that captures implicit geographic stratification resulting from the sample design. It is created by assigning a unique identifier to groups of between 10 and 19 adjacent households. Additional documentation is available on the Variance Estimation page.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Strata

Wall or building material (WALL)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the primary material used in the construction of the dwelling, particularly the dwelling's exterior walls.

Strata identifier (STRATA)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Strata identifier (STRATA)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 12
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable is the strata identifier for the sample. The STRATA variable provides information about the sample design that can be used to improve estimation.

Number of person records in the household (PERSONS)

File: ZAF2011-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

PERSONS indicates how many person records are included in the household (i.e., the number of person records associated with the household record in the sample). These person records will all have the same serial number (SERIAL) as the household record. The information contained in the household record will normally apply to all of these persons.

Person number (within household) (ZA2011A_0003)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-35

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person number (within household).

Universe

All records

Literal question

Person number (within household)

Age in completed years (ZA2011A_0401)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-110

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's age in completed years.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

F-02 Age in completed years

Interviewer instructions

2. Flap: Particulars of all individuals

Purpose: This page will collect information on name, age and gender of every household member and all visitors present on census night.

The first person to be listed on the census questionnaire must be the head or acting head of the household (a household member that makes decisions for the household).

If the household has two equal decision-makers, then the oldest person of the two will be put as the head of household (person 01).

F-00: Complete the leading zeros for each person in the household (depending on the number of people in the household). E.g. First person in the questionnaire (head of household) must be 01, followed by person 02, then 03 for the third person, etc.

If there are more than 10 people in the household, use a second questionnaire (start with 11 in the second questionnaire until person 20).

Names are used for reference purposes when completing the questionnaire. Names will not be processed.

The names of the head of the household must be written in full (name and surname). For the rest of the household members sharing the same surname as the head of household, only their names can be completed. Those members with a different surname to that of the head of the household must complete their names in full (name and surname).

For age, please provide completed years, e.g. if a baby is nine months old, complete 000, as the baby is not yet a year old. For a person aged 17 and 11 months, complete 017 as the person is not yet 18 years old.

a. Example ? Flap (below):

This household had three people on census night. Note that the examples are there to guide you when completing information for your own household.

Sex (ZA2011A_0402)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 1
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 1-2

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's sex.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

F-03 Sex

Mark the appropriate circle with an X

1. Male
2. Female

Interviewer instructions

3. Section A: Demographics (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: The information is collected to establish the total population of the country, their gender, age and other characteristics.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person who is not married should not answer the question on who their spouse/partner is, e.g. ?If 3-6 on Marital status (P-03), then Go to Population group (P-05)?.

Day of birth (ZA2011A_0403)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 2
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's day of birth.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

P-01 Date of birth

What is [the person]'s date of birth?

Day __
 Month __
 Year ____

Interviewer instructions

3. Section A: Demographics (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: The information is collected to establish the total population of the country, their gender, age and other characteristics.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person who is not married should not answer the question on who their spouse/partner is, e.g. ?If 3-6 on Marital status (P-03), then Go to Population group (P-05)?.

Year of birth (ZA2011A_0405)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 4

Decimals: 0

Range: 1900-2011

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's year of birth.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

P-01 Date of birth

What is [the person]'s date of birth?

Day __

Month __

Year ____

Interviewer instructions

3. Section A: Demographics (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: The information is collected to establish the total population of the country, their gender, age and other characteristics.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person who is not married should not answer the question on who their spouse/partner is, e.g. ?If 3-6 on Marital status (P-03), then Go to Population group (P-05)?.

Relationship to head of household (ZA2011A_0406)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 2

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's relationship to the head of the household.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Relationship to head of household (ZA2011A_0406)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-02 Relationship

What is [the person]'s relationship to the head or acting head of the household?

The head or acting head is the person listed in row 1 of the first questionnaire, if more than one questionnaire has been completed for this household.

Write the appropriate code in the box _

01. Head/ Acting head
02. Husband/ Wife/ Partner
03. Son/ Daughter
04. Adopted Son/ Daughter
05. Stepchild
06. Brother/ Sister
07. Parent (Mother/ Father)
08. Parent-in-law
09. Grand/ Great Grandchild
10. Son/ Daughter-in-law
11. Brother/ Sister-in-law
12. Grandmother/ Father
13. Other relative
14. Non-related person.

Interviewer instructions

3. Section A: Demographics (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: The information is collected to establish the total population of the country, their gender, age and other characteristics.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person who is not married should not answer the question on who their spouse/partner is, e.g. ?If 3-6 on Marital status (P-03), then Go to Population group (P-05)?.

Marital status (ZA2011A_0407)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's marital status.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

P-03 Marital status

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Married
2. Living together like married partners
3. Never married
4. Widower/Widow
5. Separated
6. Divorced

If 3-6, go to P-05

Interviewer instructions

Marital status (ZA2011A_0407)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

3. Section A: Demographics (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: The information is collected to establish the total population of the country, their gender, age and other characteristics.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person who is not married should not answer the question on who their spouse/partner is, e.g. ?If 3-6 on Marital status (P-03), then Go to Population group (P-05)?.

Race or ethnicity (ZA2011A_0409)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-5

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's race or ethnicity.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

P-05 Population group

How would [the person] describe him/herself in terms of population group?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Black African
2. Colored
3. Indian or Asian
4. White
5. Other

Interviewer instructions

3. Section A: Demographics (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: The information is collected to establish the total population of the country, their gender, age and other characteristics.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person who is not married should not answer the question on who their spouse/partner is, e.g. ?If 3-6 on Marital status (P-03), then Go to Population group (P-05)?.

First language most often used in the household (ZA2011A_0410)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's first language (the language most often used in the household).

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

First language most often used in the household (ZA2011A_0410)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-06 Language

Which two languages does [the person] speak most often in this household?

Write the appropriate code in the box.

If no other language, write 00 in the second box.

First __
Second __

01. Afrikaans
02. English
03. IsiNdebele
04. IsiXhosa
05. IsiZulu
06. Sepedi
07. Sesotho
08. Setswana
09. SiSwati
10. Tshivenda
11. Xitsonga
12. Other

Interviewer instructions

3. Section A: Demographics (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: The information is collected to establish the total population of the country, their gender, age and other characteristics.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person who is not married should not answer the question on who their spouse/partner is, e.g. ?If 3-6 on Marital status (P-03), then Go to Population group (P-05)?.

Second language most often used in the household (ZA2011A_0411)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's second language most often used in the household.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Second language most often used in the household (ZA2011A_0411)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-06 Language

Which two languages does [the person] speak most often in this household?

Write the appropriate code in the box.

If no other language, write 00 in the second box.

First _ _
Second _ _

01. Afrikaans
02. English
03. IsiNdebele
04. IsiXhosa
05. IsiZulu
06. Sepedi
07. Sesotho
08. Setswana
09. SiSwati
10. Tshivenda
11. Xitsonga
12. Other

Interviewer instructions

3. Section A: Demographics (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: The information is collected to establish the total population of the country, their gender, age and other characteristics.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person who is not married should not answer the question on who their spouse/partner is, e.g. ?If 3-6 on Marital status (P-03), then Go to Population group (P-05)?.

Province of birth (ZA2011A_0412)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's province of birth. Province is the largest-scale geographic identifier available in the South Africa samples.

Universe

Persons in private households and transient and tourist hotels

Literal question

Province of birth (ZA2011A_0412)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-07 Province of birth

In which province was [the person] born?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

01. Western Cape
02. Eastern Cape
03. Northern Cape
04. Free State
05. Kwa-Zulu Natal
06. North West
07. Gauteng
08. Mpumalanga
09. Limpopo
10. Outside South Africa
11. Do not know

If 01-09, go to P-09

Interviewer instructions

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c). Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Country of birth (ZA2011A_0413)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 111-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's country of birth.

Universe

Persons in private households and transients and tourist hotels born outside South Africa

Literal question

P-07 Province of birth

In which province was [the person] born?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

01. Western Cape
02. Eastern Cape
03. Northern Cape
04. Free State
05. Kwa-Zulu Natal
06. North West
07. Gauteng
08. Mpumalanga
09. Limpopo
10. Outside South Africa
11. Do not know

If 01-09, go to P-09

P-08 Country of birth

In which country was [the person] born?

Use capital letters only.

Interviewer instructions

Country of birth (ZA2011A_0413)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence.

Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Year of immigration (ZA2011A_0414)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 4

Decimals: 0

Range: 1935-9999

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the year that a person immigrated to South Africa.

Universe

Persons in private households and transient and tourist hotels born outside South Africa

Literal question

Year of immigration (ZA2011A_0414)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-08a Year moved to South Africa

In which year did [the person] move to South Africa?

If moved more than once to South Africa, please indicate the year of the last move.

Interviewer instructions

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence.

Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Citizenship (ZA2011A_0415)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Citizenship (ZA2011A_0415)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

This variable indicates a person's citizenship.

Universe

Persons in private households and transient and tourist hotels

Literal question

P-09 South African Citizenship

Is [the person] a South African citizen?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes

2. No

Interviewer instructions

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c). Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Enumerated in province of usual residence (ZA2011A_0416)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Enumerated in province of usual residence (ZA2011A_0416)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates if a person was enumerated in his or her province of usual residence.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

P-10 Usual residence

Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No

If 1, go to P-11

Interviewer instructions

Enumerated in province of usual residence (ZA2011A_0416)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Province of usual residence (ZA2011A_0417)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's province of usual residence. Province is the largest-scale geographic identifier available in the South Africa samples.

Universe

Persons in private households or transient and tourist hotels

Literal question

Province of usual residence (ZA2011A_0417)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-10 Usual residence

Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No

If 1, go to P-11

P-10a Province of usual residence

In which province does [the person] usually live?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

01. Western Cape
02. Eastern Cape
03. Northern Cape
04. Free State
05. Kwa-Zulu Natal
06. North West
07. Gauteng
08. Mpumalanga
09. Limpopo
10. Outside South Africa
11. Do not know

If 10, go to P-11

Interviewer instructions

Province of usual residence (ZA2011A_0417)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

District of usual residence (ZA2011A_0418)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 101-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's district of usual residence.

Universe

Persons in private households who were enumerated at a province other than their province of usual residence or transient and tourist hotels

Literal question

District of usual residence (ZA2011A_0418)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-10 Usual residence

Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month?
Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No

If 1, go to P-11

P-10b Municipality/ Magisterial district of usual residence

In which municipality or magisterial district does [the person] usually live?
Use capital letters only.

Interviewer instructions

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence.

Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Living in place of usual residence since October 2001 (ZA2011A_0419) File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether a person has been living in the place of usual residence since October 2001.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

P-11 Since 2001

Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Yes
2. No
3. Born after October 2001 but never moved.
4. Born after October 2001 and moved.

If 1 or 3, go to P-12

Interviewer instructions

Living in place of usual residence since October 2001 (ZA2011A_0419)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c). Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Month moved to place of usual residence (ZA2011A_0420)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the month that a person moved to his or her place of usual residence.

Universe

Persons in private households who moved after October 2001

Month moved to place of usual residence (ZA2011A_0420)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Literal question

P-11 Since 2001

Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Yes
2. No
3. Born after October 2001 but never moved.
4. Born after October 2001 and moved.

If 1 or 3, go to P-12

P-11a Month and year moved

When did [the person] move to this place?

Write the month and year in the appropriate boxes.

Month _ _

Year _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c). Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Year moved to place of usual residence (ZA2011A_0421)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 4

Decimals: 0

Range: 2001-9999

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the year that a person moved to his or her place of usual residence.

Universe

Persons in private households who moved after October 2001

Literal question

P-11 Since 2001

Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Yes
2. No
3. Born after October 2001 but never moved.
4. Born after October 2001 and moved.

If 1 or 3, go to P-12

P-11a Month and year moved

When did [the person] move to this place?

Write the month and year in the appropriate boxes.

Month _ _

Year _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

Year moved to place of usual residence (ZA2011A_0421)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Province of previous residence (ZA2011A_0422)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the province of a person's previous residence. Province is the largest-scale geographic identifier available in the South Africa samples.

Universe

Persons in private households who moved after October 2001

Literal question

Province of previous residence (ZA2011A_0422)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-11 Since 2001

Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Yes
2. No
3. Born after October 2001 but never moved.
4. Born after October 2001 and moved.

If 1 or 3, go to P-12

P-11b Province of previous residence

In which province did [the person] live before moving to this place?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

01. Western Cape
02. Eastern Cape
03. Northern Cape
04. Free State
05. Kwa-Zulu Natal
06. North West
07. Gauteng
08. Mpumalanga
09. Limpopo
10. Outside South Africa
11. Do not know

If 10, go to P-12

Interviewer instructions

Province of previous residence (ZA2011A_0422)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

District of previous residence (ZA2011A_0486)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 101-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's district of previous residence.

Universe

Persons in private households who moved after October 2001, within South Africa

Literal question

District of previous residence (ZA2011A_0486)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-11 Since 2001

Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Yes
2. No
3. Born after October 2001 but never moved.
4. Born after October 2001 and moved.

If 1 or 3, go to P-12

P-11c Municipality/ Magisterial district of previous residence

In which municipality or magisterial district did [the person] live before moving to this place?

Use capital letters only.

Interviewer instructions

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c). Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Municipality of previous residence (ZA2011A_0423)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 6
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 101160-999999

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the municipality of a person's previous residence.

Universe

Persons in private households who moved after October 2001, within South Africa

Literal question

P-11 Since 2001

Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Yes
2. No
3. Born after October 2001 but never moved.
4. Born after October 2001 and moved.

If 1 or 3, go to P-12

P-11c Municipality/ Magisterial district of previous residence

In which municipality or magisterial district did [the person] live before moving to this place?

Use capital letters only.

Interviewer instructions

Municipality of previous residence (ZA2011A_0423)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Difficulty seeing (ZA2011A_0424)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has difficulty seeing.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Difficulty seeing (ZA2011A_0424)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section C: General health and Functioning
Ask of everyone listed in the flap.

P-12 Health and functioning

Does [the person have difficulty in the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box.

- ☐ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid
- ☐ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others)
- ☐ D. Walking or climbing stairs
- ☐ E. Remembering or concentrating
- ☐ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding

1. No difficulty
2. Some difficulty
3. A lot of difficulty
4. Cannot do at all
5. Do not know
6. Cannot yet be determined

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Difficulty hearing (ZA2011A_0425)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has difficulty hearing.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Difficulty hearing (ZA2011A_0425)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section C: General health and Functioning

Ask of everyone listed in the flap.

P-12 Health and functioning

Does [the person have difficulty in the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box.

- ☐ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid
- ☐ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others)
- ☐ D. Walking or climbing stairs
- ☐ E. Remembering or concentrating
- ☐ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Cannot do at all
- 5. Do not know
- 6. Cannot yet be determined

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Difficulty communicating (ZA2011A_0426)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has difficulty communicating.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Difficulty communicating (ZA2011A_0426)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section C: General health and Functioning
Ask of everyone listed in the flap.

P-12 Health and functioning

Does [the person have difficulty in the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box.

- ☐ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid
- ☐ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others)
- ☐ D. Walking or climbing stairs
- ☐ E. Remembering or concentrating
- ☐ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding

1. No difficulty
2. Some difficulty
3. A lot of difficulty
4. Cannot do at all
5. Do not know
6. Cannot yet be determined

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Difficulty walking or climbing stairs (ZA2011A_0427)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has difficulty walking or climbing stairs.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Difficulty walking or climbing stairs (ZA2011A_0427)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section C: General health and Functioning
Ask of everyone listed in the flap.

P-12 Health and functioning

Does [the person have difficulty in the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box.

- ☐ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid
- ☐ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others)
- ☐ D. Walking or climbing stairs
- ☐ E. Remembering or concentrating
- ☐ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Cannot do at all
- 5. Do not know
- 6. Cannot yet be determined

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Difficulty remembering or concentrating (ZA2011A_0428)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has difficulty remembering or concentrating.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Difficulty remembering or concentrating (ZA2011A_0428)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section C: General health and Functioning
Ask of everyone listed in the flap.

P-12 Health and functioning

Does [the person have difficulty in the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box.

- ☐ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid
- ☐ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others)
- ☐ D. Walking or climbing stairs
- ☐ E. Remembering or concentrating
- ☐ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Cannot do at all
- 5. Do not know
- 6. Cannot yet be determined

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Difficulty with self care such as washing, dressing or feeding (ZA2011A_0429)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has difficulty with self-care such as washing, dressing or feeding.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Difficulty with self care such as washing, dressing or feeding (ZA2011A_0429)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section C: General health and Functioning

Ask of everyone listed in the flap.

P-12 Health and functioning

Does [the person have difficulty in the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 6] in the box.

- ☐ A. Seeing even when using eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing even when using a hearing aid
- ☐ C. Communicating in his/her language (i.e. understanding others or being understood by others)
- ☐ D. Walking or climbing stairs
- ☐ E. Remembering or concentrating
- ☐ F. With self-care such as washing all over, dressing, or feeding

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Cannot do at all
- 5. Do not know
- 6. Cannot yet be determined

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Uses eyeglasses (ZA2011A_0430)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person uses eyeglasses.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

P-13 Assistive devices and medication

Does [the person] use any of the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box.

- ☐ A. Eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing aid
- ☐ C. Walking stick or frame
- ☐ D. A wheelchair
- ☐ E. Chronic medication

- 1. Yes
- 2. No
- 3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Uses eyeglasses (ZA2011A_0430)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Uses hearing aid (ZA2011A_0431)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person uses a hearing aid.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

P-13 Assistive devices and medication

Does [the person] use any of the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box.

- ☐ A. Eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing aid
- ☐ C. Walking stick or frame
- ☐ D. A wheelchair
- ☐ E. Chronic medication

- 1. Yes
- 2. No
- 3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Uses walking stick or frame (ZA2011A_0432)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person uses a walking stick or frame.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Uses walking stick or frame (ZA2011A_0432)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-13 Assistive devices and medication

Does [the person] use any of the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box.

- ☐ A. Eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing aid
- ☐ C. Walking stick or frame
- ☐ D. A wheelchair
- ☐ E. Chronic medication

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Uses wheelchair (ZA2011A_0433)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person uses a wheelchair.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

P-13 Assistive devices and medication

Does [the person] use any of the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box.

- ☐ A. Eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing aid
- ☐ C. Walking stick or frame
- ☐ D. A wheelchair
- ☐ E. Chronic medication

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Uses chronic medication (ZA2011A_0434)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person uses chronic medication.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

P-13 Assistive devices and medication

Does [the person] use any of the following?

Write the appropriate code [number from 1 to 3] in the box.

- ☐ A. Eye glasses
- ☐ B. Hearing aid
- ☐ C. Walking stick or frame
- ☐ D. A wheelchair
- ☐ E. Chronic medication

- 1. Yes
- 2. No
- 3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5. Section C: General health and functioning (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Helps to determine the number of people with disabilities in the country for planning and provision of services.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

Mother alive (ZA2011A_0435)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person's mother is still alive.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

P-14 Mother alive

Is [the person]'s own biological mother still alive?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X

If 2-3, go to P-15.

- 1. Yes
- 2. No
- 3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Mother alive (ZA2011A_0435)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

6. Section D: Parental survival and income (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information on orphanhood and helps in the estimation of adult mortality.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the flap.

Information on income is used by the National Treasury for budget allocation to provinces and municipalities and also helps in determining the country's socio-economic status.

Social grants income for children should be recorded under the child, NOT the caregiver.

Person number of mother (ZA2011A_0436)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 2

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person number of a person's mother.

Universe

Persons in private households whose mothers are alive

Literal question

P-14a Mother person number

Who in this household is [the person]'s biological mother?

If the person's mother does not reside in the household (not listed on the flap), write 98.

Note: Refer to person number on flap e.g. 02

--

Interviewer instructions

6. Section D: Parental survival and income (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information on orphanhood and helps in the estimation of adult mortality.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the flap.

Information on income is used by the National Treasury for budget allocation to provinces and municipalities and also helps in determining the country's socio-economic status.

Social grants income for children should be recorded under the child, NOT the caregiver.

Father alive (ZA2011A_0437)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person's father is still alive.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Father alive (ZA2011A_0437)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-14 Father alive

Is [the person]'s own biological father still alive?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X

If 2-3, go to P-16.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

6. Section D: Parental survival and income (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information on orphanhood and helps in the estimation of adult mortality.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the flap.

Information on income is used by the National Treasury for budget allocation to provinces and municipalities and also helps in determining the country's socio-economic status.

Social grants income for children should be recorded under the child, NOT the caregiver.

Person number of father (ZA2011A_0438)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person number of a person's father.

Universe

Persons in private households whose fathers are alive

Literal question

P-14a Father person number

Who in this household is [the person]'s biological father?

If the person's father does not reside in the household (not listed on the flap), write 98.

Note: Refer to person number on flap e.g. 02

--

Interviewer instructions

6. Section D: Parental survival and income (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information on orphanhood and helps in the estimation of adult mortality.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the flap.

Information on income is used by the National Treasury for budget allocation to provinces and municipalities and also helps in determining the country's socio-economic status.

Social grants income for children should be recorded under the child, NOT the caregiver.

Annual household income category (ZA2011A_0439)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Annual household income category (ZA2011A_0439)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Description

This variable indicates the annual household income, as a category.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

P-16 Income category

What is the income category that best describes the gross monthly income or annual income of [the person] before deductions and including all sources of income?

Gross income should include all sources of income e.g. Social grant, UIF, remittances, rentals, investments, sales or products, services, etc.

Monthly

01. No income
02. R1 - R400
03. R401 - R800
04. R801 - R1 600
05. R1 601 - R3 200
06. R3 201 - R6 400
07. R6 401 - R12 800
08. R12 801 - R25 600
09. R25 601 - R51 200
10. R51 201 - R102 400
11. R102 401 - R204 800
12. R204 801 and more

Annual

01. No income
02. R1 - R4 800
03. R4 801 - R9 600
04. R9 601 - R19 200
05. R19 201 - R38 400
06. R38 401 - R76 800
07. R76 801 - R153 600
08. R153 601 - R307 200
09. R307 201 - R614 400
10. R614 401 - R1 228 800
11. R1 228 801 - R2 457 600
12. R2 457 601 and more

Interviewer instructions

6. Section D: Parental survival and income (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information on orphanhood and helps in the estimation of adult mortality.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the flap.

Information on income is used by the National Treasury for budget allocation to provinces and municipalities and also helps in determining the country's socio-economic status.

Social grants income for children should be recorded under the child, NOT the caregiver.

Currently attends school (ZA2011A_0440)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Currently attends school (ZA2011A_0440)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether a person currently attends school.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households

Literal question

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-17 School Attendance

Does [the person] presently attend an educational institution?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X

Attendance includes all part-time, full-time studies, whether in person or as a distance learner.

If 2-3, go to P-20.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know.

Interviewer instructions

Currently attends school (ZA2011A_0440)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Educational institution type (ZA2011A_0441)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of educational institution that a person attends.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households attending school

Literal question

Educational institution type (ZA2011A_0441)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-18 Educational institution

Which of the following educational institutions does [the person] attend?

Write the appropriate codes in the boxes _

1. Pre-school (including day care, crche, pre-primary, ECD center)
2. School (including Grade R learners who attend a formal school)
3. Adult Basic Education and Training Learning Centre (ABET Centre)
4. Literacy classes (e.g. Kha Ri Gude, SANLI)
5. Higher Educational Institution (University/University of Technology)
6. Further Education and Training College (FET)
7. Other College
8. Home based education/home schooling

Interviewer instructions

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Public or private institution (ZA2011A_0442)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 1
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the education institution that a person attends is public or private.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households attending school

Literal question

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-19 Public or private

Is the institution that [the person] attending public or private?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Public (Government)
2. Private (Independent)
3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Public or private institution (ZA2011A_0442)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Highest level of education (ZA2011A_0443)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the highest level of education that a person has attained.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households

Literal question

Highest level of education (ZA2011A_0443)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-20 Level of education

What is the highest level of education that [the person] has completed?

Read out: Diploma or certificate should have been at least six months study duration full-time or equivalent.

Write the appropriate code in the box __

- 98. No schooling
- 00. Grade 0
- 01. Grade 1/Sub A
- 02. Grade 2/Sub B
- 03. Grade 3/Std 1/ABET 1(Kha Ri Gude, SANLI)
- 04. Grade 4/Std 2
- 05. Grade 5/Std 3 / ABET 2
- 06. Grade 6/Std 4
- 07. Grade 7/Std 5 / ABET 3

If 98 or 00-07, go to P-22.

- 08. Grade 8/Std 6 / Form 1
- 09. Grade 9/Std 7/Form 2/
- 10. Grade 10/Std 8/Form 3
- 11. Grade 11/Std 9/Form 4
- 12. Grade 12/Std 10 /Form 5

If 08-12, go to P-23.

- 13. NTC I/N1/ NIC/(V) Level 2
- 14. NTCII/N2/ NIC/(V) Level 3
- 15. NTCIII/N3/NIC/(V) Level 4
- 16. N4/NTC 4
- 17. N5/NTC 5
- 18. N6/NTC 6
- 19. Certificate with less than Grade 12/ Std10
- 20. Diploma with less than Grade 12/Std 10
- 21. Certificate with Grade 12/Std 10
- 22. Diploma with Grade 12/Std 10
- 23. Higher Diploma
- 24. Post Higher Diploma (Masters, Doctoral Diploma)
- 25. Bachelor's degree
- 26. Bachelor's degree and Post graduate diploma
- 27. Honours degree
- 28. Higher degree (Masters/PhD)
- 29. Other

If 13-29, go to P-21.

Interviewer instructions

Highest level of education (ZA2011A_0443)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Field of education (ZA2011A_0444)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's field of education.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households who had higher education qualifications

Literal question

Field of education (ZA2011A_0444)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-21 Field of education

In which field is [the person?s] highest post-school qualification?

Write the appropriate code in the box __

01. Agriculture or Renewable Natural Resources
02. Architecture or Environmental Design
03. Arts, Visual or Performing
04. Business, Commerce or Management Sciences
05. Communication
06. Computer Sciences
07. Education, Training or Development
08. Engineering or Engineering Technology
09. Health Care or Health Sciences
10. Home Economics
11. Industrial Arts, Traders or Technology
12. Languages, Linguistics or Literature
13. Law
14. Libraries or Museums
15. Life Sciences or Physical Sciences
16. Mathematical Sciences
17. Military Sciences
18. Philosophy, Religion or Theology
19. Physical Education or Leisure
20. Psychology
21. Public Administration or Social Services
22. Social Sciences or Social Studies
- Further education and training fields of education
23. Management
24. Marketing
25. Information Technology and Computer Science
26. Finance, Economics and Accounting
27. Office Administration
28. Electrical Infrastructure
29. Civil Engineering and Building
30. Engineering
31. Primary Agriculture
32. Hospitality
33. Tourism
34. Safety in society
35. Mechatronics
36. Education and Development
37. Other

Any response, go to P-23.

Interviewer instructions

Field of education (ZA2011A_0444)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Difficulty writing name (ZA2011A_0445)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person has difficulty writing his or her name.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households with primary or no education

Literal question

Difficulty writing name (ZA2011A_0445)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-22 Literacy

Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following?

Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box.

- ☐ A. Writing his/her name
- ☐ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language
- ☐ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms)
- ☐ D. Writing a letter in any language
- ☐ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something
- ☐ F. Reading road signs

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Unable to do
- 5. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Difficulty reading (ZA2011A_0446)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person has difficulty reading.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households with primary or no education

Literal question

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-22 Literacy

Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following?

Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box.

- ☐ A. Writing his/her name
- ☐ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language
- ☐ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms)
- ☐ D. Writing a letter in any language
- ☐ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something
- ☐ F. Reading road signs

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Unable to do
- 5. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Difficulty reading (ZA2011A_0446)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Difficulty filling in form (ZA2011A_0447)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person has difficulty filling in a form.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households with primary or no education

Literal question

Difficulty filling in form (ZA2011A_0447)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-22 Literacy

Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following?

Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box.

- ☐ A. Writing his/her name
- ☐ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language
- ☐ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms)
- ☐ D. Writing a letter in any language
- ☐ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something
- ☐ F. Reading road signs

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Unable to do
- 5. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Difficulty writing a letter in any language (ZA2011A_0448)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person has difficulty writing a letter in any language.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households with primary or no education

Literal question

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-22 Literacy

Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following?

Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box.

- ☐ A. Writing his/her name
- ☐ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language
- ☐ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms)
- ☐ D. Writing a letter in any language
- ☐ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something
- ☐ F. Reading road signs

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Unable to do
- 5. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Difficulty writing a letter in any language (ZA2011A_0448)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Difficulty calculating change (ZA2011A_0449)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person has difficulty calculating change.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households with primary or no education

Literal question

Difficulty calculating change (ZA2011A_0449)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-22 Literacy

Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following?

Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box.

- ☐ A. Writing his/her name
- ☐ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language
- ☐ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms)
- ☐ D. Writing a letter in any language
- ☐ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something
- ☐ F. Reading road signs

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Unable to do
- 5. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Difficulty reading road signs (ZA2011A_0450)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person has difficulty reading road signs.

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households with primary or no education

Literal question

Section E: Education

Ask of all persons aged 5 years and older listed on the flap.

P-22 Literacy

Does (name) have difficulty in doing any of the following?

Write the code [number from 1 to 5] in the appropriate box.

- ☐ A. Writing his/her name
- ☐ B. Reading (e.g. newspapers, magazines, religious books etc) in any language
- ☐ C. Filling in a form (e.g. social grants forms)
- ☐ D. Writing a letter in any language
- ☐ E. Calculating/working out how much change he/she should receive when buying something
- ☐ F. Reading road signs

- 1. No difficulty
- 2. Some difficulty
- 3. A lot of difficulty
- 4. Unable to do
- 5. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Difficulty reading road signs (ZA2011A_0450)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

7. Section E: Education (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: This section collects information regarding the knowledge and skills in the country.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire aged 5 years and older.

All persons attending school (P-17) must answer questions on educational institution (P-18).

Level of education should be the highest level completed by the person, not what is currently being attended.

E.g. if a child is currently attending grade 4, then the child's highest level of education is grade 3.

If someone has completed grade 12, and is currently doing their last year before graduating with a degree/diploma, then their highest level of education is Grade 12.

P-21, if a person has a diploma or degree (from university or technikon or college), they should answer from option 01 to 22. Those who have qualifications from FET colleges should answer options 23 to 36.

f. Example ? Education (below):

No response is expected for Adam because he is younger than 5 and this question addresses people that are 5 years and older.

Diana's highest level of education is a Bachelor's degree, hence her choice of option 25 (Note the skip to P-21).

Francinah only has Grade 2 as her highest level of education (Note the skip to P-22).

[Figure omitted, example]

g. Example ? Education cont. (below):

The question on field of education (P-21) is to be answered by people who have post- school qualifications.

NOTE: options 01 to 22 are for people with qualifications from a university or technikon while options 23 to 36 are for people with qualifications from FET colleges.

Diana is the only person in the household who should complete this question.

Diana reports that her degree is in health care (option 09).

[Figure omitted, example]

h. Example ? Education cont. (below):

Household members who are 5 years and older, without any formal education and those with primary education (up to grade 7) (P-20) must complete this question.

Francinah is the only person in the household who can complete this question.

Francinah reported that she has some difficulty in writing her name, a lot of difficulty in reading, she is unable to complete a form, some difficulty in writing a letter and that she is unable to read road signs and calculate change.

Only codes 1 to 5 can be written in the boxes provided.

A person whose level of education is secondary school or tertiary should not answer the question on literacy (P-22).

Worked for pay (even only one hour) during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0451)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person worked for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind, even if only for one hour, during the 7 days before October 10, 2011.

Universe

Persons 15+ in private households

Literal question

Worked for pay (even only one hour) during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0451) File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

Interviewer instructions

Worked for pay (even only one hour) during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0451)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.

Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Ran or performed any kind of business (even only for one hour) during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0452)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Ran or performed any kind of business (even only for one hour) during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0452)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

This variable indicates that a person ran or performed any kind of business, big or small, even if only for one hour, during the 7 days before October 10, 2011.

Universe

Persons 15+ in private households

Literal question

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

Interviewer instructions

Ran or performed any kind of business (even only for one hour) during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0452)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.

Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Helped without being paid for business run by her or his household during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0453)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Helped without being paid for business run by her or his household during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0453)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

This variable indicates that a person helped without being paid in any kind of business that is run by his or her household, during the 7 days before October 10, 2011.

Universe

Persons 15+ in private households

Literal question

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

Interviewer instructions

Helped without being paid for business run by her or his household during last 7 days (ZA2011A_0453)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.

Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Temporary absence from work in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0454)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person was temporarily absent from work in the 7 days before October 10, 2011.

Temporary absence from work in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0454)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Universe

Persons 15+ in private households who did not work for a wage, run a business, or help without payment

Literal question

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

P-24 Temporary absence from work

Even though [the person] did not do any work for pay, profit or did not help without pay in a household business in the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October, did he/she have a paid job or business that he/she would definitely return to?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1, go to P-29a

Interviewer instructions

Temporary absence from work in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0454)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.
Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Looked for job or tried to start a business in the 4 last weeks (ZA2011A_0455)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person looked for a job or tried to start a business during the 4 weeks before October 10, 2011.

Looked for job or tried to start a business in the 4 last weeks (ZA2011A_0455) File: ZAF2011-P-H

Universe

Persons 15+ in private households who were not temporarily absent from work and did not work for a wage, run a business, or help without payment

Literal question

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

P-25 Looking for work

In the four weeks before 10 October was [the person] looking for any kind of job or trying to start any kind of business?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1, go to P-28

Interviewer instructions

Looked for job or tried to start a business in the 4 last weeks (ZA2011A_0455)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.

Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Would have liked to work or start a business in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0456)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Would have liked to work or start a business in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0456) File: ZAF2011-P-H

This variable indicates that a person would have liked to work or start a business in the 7 days before October 10, 2011.

Universe

Persons 15+ in private households who did not look for work, who were not temporarily absent from work, and did not work for a wage, run a business, or help without payment

Literal question

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

P-26 Liked to work

Would (name) have liked to work in the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 2 or 3, go to P-32

Interviewer instructions

Would have liked to work or start a business in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0456)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.

Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Reasons for not working in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0457)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's reasons for not working in the 7 days before October 10, 2011.

Reasons for not working in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0457)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Universe

Persons 15+ in private households who did not look for work, who were not temporarily absent from work, and did not work for a wage, run a business, or help without payment, but would have liked to work

Literal question

Reasons for not working in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0457)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

P-27 Reasons for not working

What was the main reason for not trying to find work or starting a business in the last four weeks before 10 October?

Write the appropriate code in the box __

01. Awaiting the season for work
02. Waiting to be recalled to former job
03. Health reasons
04. Pregnancy
05. Disabled or unable to work (handicapped)
06. Housewife/homemaker (family considerations/child care)
07. Undergoing training to help find work
08. No jobs available in the area
09. Lack of money to pay for transport to look for work
10. Unable to find work requiring his/her skills
11. Lost hope of finding any kind of work
12. No transport available
13. Scholar or student
14. Retired
15. Too old/young to work
16. Did not want to work
17. Other

Reasons for not working in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0457)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Interviewer instructions

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.
Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Available to start work in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0458)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a person was available to start work in the 7 days before October 10, 2011.

Universe

Available to start work in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0458)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Persons 15+ in private households who looked for work or tried to start a business, who were not temporarily absent from work, and did not work for a wage, run a business, or help without payment, but would have liked to work

Literal question

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

P-28 Available to work

If a suitable job had been offered or circumstances had allowed, would [the person] have been able to start work or a business in the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

Any response, go to P-32

Interviewer instructions

Available to start work in the last 7 days (ZA2011A_0458)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.
Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Sector (ZA2011A_0459)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's sector of work.

Universe

Sector (ZA2011A_0459)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Persons 15+ in private households who worked for a wage, ran a business, helped without payment, or were temporarily absent from work

Literal question

Section F: Employment

Ask of all persons aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

P-23 Employment status

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23a

Did [the person] work for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind (including paid domestic work), even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23b

Did (name) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for herself/himself or with one or more partners, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

In the SEVEN DAYS before 10 October ?

P-23c

Did (name) help without being paid in any kind of business run by her/his household, even if it was for only one hour?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 1 to any P-23a, P-23b, or P-23c, go to P-29a

P-31 Type of sector

Is [the person]'s place of work?

Write the appropriate code in the box.

1. In the formal sector
2. In the informal sector
3. Private household
4. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Sector (ZA2011A_0459)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

8. Section F: Employment (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides information regarding the country's labor force (people who are employed, in business, unemployed and not economically active).

This section must be completed for everyone aged 15 years and older listed on the flap.

Employment: P-23a, P-23b and P-23c: You must complete all of the questions (a, b and c), and if you answered a 'Yes' on any of them, you skip the following questions and continue answering on P-29a (Industry).

For employment (P-29a), PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD refers to domestic workers and gardeners only.

i. Example ? Employment (below):

No response is expected for Adam, because the question is for people who are 15 years and older.

Diana and Francinah provided answers to all the three questions (P-23a, b and c).

Neither Diana nor Francinah worked for a wage, ran a business or helped in a family business in the seven days before October 10 (NO to P-23a, b and c).

[Figure omitted, example]

j. Example- Employment cont. (below):

Diana has a paid job, although at the time of completing the questionnaire, she was on maternity leave.
Francinah is a pensioner.

[Figure omitted, example]

k. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those who are working, the industry (P-29a) question must be completed.

For people with no-name businesses (from home or street), write OWNHOUSE or NOFIXEDLOCATION.

Diana works at the Chris Barnard Memorial Hospital.

[Figure omitted, example]

l. Example ? Employment cont. (below):

For those that have a job, P-29b (main goods or services), P30a (occupation), P-30b (main task/duty) and P-31 (type of sector) must be completed.

If a member of the household has more than one job (e.g. has a paid job and runs a business), he/she should report on the one where they spend most of their time.

See Diana's example.

Type of sector:

Formal sector employment is where the business, institution or private individual is registered in some way with the government or statutory bodies to perform the activity. Registration may involve collecting taxes (e.g. PAYE), making UIF contributions or having a business licence.

Informal sector employment is where the business or private individual is not registered with the government or any statutory body in any way.

Live births (ZA2011A_0460)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of live children that a woman has given birth to.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households

Live births (ZA2011A_0460)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Literal question

Section G: Fertility

Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-32 Children ever born

Has [the person] ever given birth to a live child, even if the child died soon after birth?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No
3. Do not know

If 2 or 3, go to H-01

Interviewer instructions

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.

This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.

If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).

If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.

If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Age at first birth (ZA2011A_0461)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 2

Decimals: 0

Range: 12-99

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the woman's age at first birth.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households

Literal question

Section G: Fertility

Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-33 Age at first birth

At what age did [the person] have their first born child?

--

Interviewer instructions

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.

This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.

If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).

If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.

If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Number of male children ever born (ZA2011A_0462)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of male children ever born to a woman.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households

Literal question

Number of male children ever born

Number of female children ever born (ZA2011A_0463)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of female children ever born.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households

Literal question

Number of female children ever born

Number of children ever born (ZA2011A_0464)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of children ever born to a woman.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households who had given birth to a live child

Literal question

Section G: Fertility
Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-34 Total children ever born
How many children has [the person] ever had that were born alive?

--

Interviewer instructions

Number of children ever born (ZA2011A_0464)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.

This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.

If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).

If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.

If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Month of last child's birth (ZA2011A_0466)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 2

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the month of the last child's birth.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households who had given birth to a live child

Literal question

Section G: Fertility

Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-38 Last child born

When was [the person's] last child born, even if the child died soon after birth?

Interviewer instructions

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.

This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.

If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).

If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.

If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Year of last child's birth (ZA2011A_0467)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 4

Decimals: 0

Range: 1972-9999

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the year of the last child's birth.

Year of last child's birth (ZA2011A_0467)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households who had given birth to a live child

Literal question

Section G: Fertility

Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-38 Last child born

When was [the person's] last child born, even if the child died soon after birth?

--

Interviewer instructions

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.

This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.

If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).

If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.

If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Sex of last child born (ZA2011A_0468)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the sex of the last child born.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households who had given birth to a live child

Literal question

Section G: Fertility

Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-39 Sex of last child born

Is [the person's] last child born male or female?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Male

2. Female

3. Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Sex of last child born (ZA2011A_0468)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.

This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.

If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).

If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.

If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Last child born still alive (ZA2011A_0469)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the last child born is still alive.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households who had given birth to a live child

Literal question

Section G: Fertility

Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-40 Last child born alive

Is [the person's] last child born still alive?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes

2. No

3. Do not know

If 1 or 3, go to H-01

Interviewer instructions

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.

This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.

If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).

If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.

If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Month of last child's death (ZA2011A_0471)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Month of last child's death (ZA2011A_0471)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the month of the last child's death.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households who reported that their last born child had died

Literal question

Section G: Fertility
Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-41 Date of death of the last child born
When did [the person's] last child born die?

Day __
Month __
Year ____

Interviewer instructions

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)
Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.
This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.
If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).
If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.
If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Year of last child's death (ZA2011A_0472)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 1979-9999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the year of the last child's death.

Universe

Females aged 12-50 in private households who reported that their last born child had died

Literal question

Section G: Fertility
Ask of women aged 12-50 years on the flap

P-41 Date of death of the last child born
When did [the person's] last child born die?

Day __
Month __
Year ____

Interviewer instructions

Year of last child's death (ZA2011A_0472)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

9. Section G: Fertility (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Provides an estimation of fertility in the country which helps in population projections.

This section must be completed ONLY for women aged 12 to 50 years.

This should not include miscarriages, stillbirths and adopted children.

If the woman stays with all her children and none have died, then put 00 on P-36 to P-37 (for boys, girls and total).

If a woman is a visitor, the question on total children living with her in the household (P-35) must be about the children she is visiting with. Then all her other children who are not there with her will be living elsewhere.

If she is visiting alone, then P-35 will be 00 as she does not have any children with her in the household that she is part of on census night.

Region of birth (derived) (ZA2011A_0476)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 2

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's region of birth.

Universe

Persons in private households or transient and tourist hotels

Literal question

P-08 Country of birth

In which country was [the person] born?

Use capital letters only.

Interviewer instructions

Region of birth (derived) (ZA2011A_0476)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Province of previous residence (derived) (ZA2011A_0477)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's province of previous residence (derived). Province is the largest-scale geographic identifier available in the South Africa samples.

Universe

Persons in private households

Literal question

Province of previous residence (derived) (ZA2011A_0477)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-11 Since 2001

Has [the person] been living in this place since October 2001?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

1. Yes
2. No
3. Born after October 2001 but never moved.
4. Born after October 2001 and moved.

If 1 or 3, go to P-12

P-11b Province of previous residence

In which province did [the person] live before moving to this place?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

01. Western Cape
02. Eastern Cape
03. Northern Cape
04. Free State
05. Kwa-Zulu Natal
06. North West
07. Gauteng
08. Mpumalanga
09. Limpopo
10. Outside South Africa
11. Do not know

If 10, go to P-12

Interviewer instructions

Province of previous residence (derived) (ZA2011A_0477)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Province of usual residence (derived) (ZA2011A_0478)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's province of usual residence (derived). Province is the largest-scale geographic identifier available in the South Africa samples.

Universe

Persons in private households or transient and tourist hotels

Literal question

Province of usual residence (derived) (ZA2011A_0478)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

P-10 Usual residence

Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month?

Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No

If 1, go to P-11

P-10a Province of usual residence

In which province does [the person] usually live?

Write the appropriate code in the box _

01. Western Cape
02. Eastern Cape
03. Northern Cape
04. Free State
05. Kwa-Zulu Natal
06. North West
07. Gauteng
08. Mpumalanga
09. Limpopo
10. Outside South Africa
11. Do not know

If 10, go to P-11

Interviewer instructions

Province of usual residence (derived) (ZA2011A_0478)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Labour market status (derived) (ZA2011A_0479)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's labour market status (derived).

Universe

Persons 15+ in private households who worked or were available to work during the last 7 days, or looked for work during the last 4 weeks

Literal question

Labour market status (derived) (ZA2011A_0479)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Labour market status (derived)

Official employment status (derived) (ZA2011A_0480)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's official employment status (derived).

Universe

Persons 15-64 in private households

Literal question

Official employment status (derived)

Expanded employment status (derived) (ZA2011A_0481)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's expanded employment status (derived).

Universe

Persons 15-64 in private households

Literal question

Expanded employment status (derived)

Grouped level of education (derived) (ZA2011A_0482)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's grouped level of education (derived).

Universe

Persons 5+ in private households

Literal question

Grouped level of education (derived)

Any births in past 12 months (derived) (ZA2011A_0483)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 1
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates that a woman gave birth in the past 12 months (derived).

Universe

Females aged 12-50

Literal question

Any births in past 12 months (derived)

Indicator for urban or rural residence (ZA2011A_0484)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
 Format: numeric
 Width: 1
 Decimals: 0
 Range: 1-3

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable is an Indicator for urban or rural residence.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Indicator for urban or rural residence

Person weight (ZA2011A_0485)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
 Format: numeric
 Width: 11
 Decimals: 9

Valid cases: 0
 Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person weight.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Person weight

Municipality of usual residence (ZA2011A_0487)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Municipality of usual residence (ZA2011A_0487)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0
Range: 101160-999999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates a person's municipality of usual residence.

Universe

Persons in private households who were enumerated at a province other than their province of usual residence or transient and tourist hotels

Literal question

P-10 Usual residence

Does [the person] usually live in this household at least four nights a week and has done so for the last six month?
Mark the appropriate circle with an X.

1. Yes
2. No

If 1, go to P-11

P-10b Municipality/ Magisterial district of usual residence

In which municipality or magisterial district does [the person] usually live?
Use capital letters only.

Interviewer instructions

Municipality of usual residence (ZA2011A_0487)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

4. Section B: Migration (remember to follow instructions)

Purpose: Information is used to measure the movement of people from one geographical area to another for better understanding of the population and for planning purposes.

This section must be completed for every person listed on the questionnaire.

A person whose usual residence is outside South Africa should not answer the questions on province or municipality of usual residence.

If municipality/magisterial district is not known, leave the question blank.

b. Example ? Migration (below):

All three people in this scenario were born in Western Cape.

Questions on country of birth and the year they moved to South Africa are only for those who were born outside the country.

The question on citizenship is answered by all persons listed on the questionnaire.

[Figure omitted, example]

c. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Francinah was visiting her daughter on census night.

Only visitors report on the province, municipality and nearest city/town where they usually live (P-10a, P-10b and P-10c).

Infants (younger than six months) should answer YES on (P-10) if their parents/guardians intend for them to live with the household for at least four nights a week for the next six months.

Persons who have recently moved to a new place and intend to live there for at least four nights a week for the next six months should also answer YES on P-10.

[Figure omitted, example]

d. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Diana has not been living in this place since October 2001.

She moved into this place in November 2007 from within Western Cape.

Adam was born after October 2001 and has never moved.

Francinah has never moved from her place of usual residence (Please note that Francinah is a visitor and is reporting on her place of usual residence).

As Adam and Francinah have never moved, they do not have to complete the questions.

Household members that have moved more than once should report their last move.

[Figure omitted, example]

e. Example ? Migration cont. (below):

Household members that moved, should complete the province, municipality and nearest city/town of previous residence. Diana moved from Stellenbosch local municipality where her nearest city/town was Franschhoek where she was staying with her mother (Francinah).

Adam and Francinah have never moved, so they do not have to complete the questions.

Person number (PERNUM)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous

Format: numeric

Width: 3

Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

PERNUM numbers all persons within each household consecutively (starting with "1" for the first person record of each household). When combined with SAMPLE and SERIAL, PERNUM uniquely identifies each person in the IPUMS-International database.

Mother's location in household (MOMLOC)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MOMLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's mother lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number of the mother (see PERNUM). MOMLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of children and their (probable) mothers.

The method by which probable child-mother links are identified is described in PARRULE.

The general design of MOMLOC and other constructed variables follows the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships," but the details vary significantly.

Note: MOMLOC identifies social relationships (such as stepmother and adopted mother) as well as biological relationships. The variable STEPMOM is designed to identify some of these social relationships.

Father's location in household (POPLOC)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

POPLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's father lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number of the father (see PERNUM). POPLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of children and their (probable) fathers.

The method by which probable child-father links are identified is described in PARRULE.

The general design of POPLOC and other constructed variables follows the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships," but the details vary significantly.

Note: POPLOC identifies social relationships (such as stepfather and adopted father) as well as biological relationships. The variable STEPPOP is designed to identify some of these social relationships.

Spouse's location in household (SPLOC)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Spouse's location in household (SPLOC)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

SPLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's spouse lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number (PERNUM) of the spouse. SPLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of (probable) spouses.

The method by which probable spouse-spouse links are identified is described in SPRULE.

The general design of SPLOC and other constructed variables is modeled on the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships", but the details vary significantly.

Rule for linking parent (PARRULE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-52

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

PARRULE describes the criteria by which the IPUMS-International variables MOMLOC and POPLOC linked the person to a probable mother and/or father.

IPUMS-International establishes child-parent links according to five basic rules, and PARRULE gives the number of the rule that applied to the link in question. A link to any parent automatically generates a second link to that parent's spouse or partner, so only one rule is needed to describe both MOMLOC and POPLOC.

The design of the interrelationship variables is described in this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

Rule for linking spouse (SPRULE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SPRULE explains the criteria by which the IPUMS-International variable SPLOC linked the person to his/her probable spouse.

IPUMS-International establishes spouse-spouse links according to five basic rules, and SPRULE gives the number of the rule that applied to the link in question. A sixth rule identifies sample-specific linking procedures only imposed in selected instances.

The design of the interrelationship variables is described in this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

Probable stepmother (STEPMOM)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Probable stepmother (STEPMOM)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

STEPMOM indicates whether a person's mother, as identified by MOMLOC, was most probably not the person's biological mother. Non-zero values of STEPMOM explain why it is probable that the person's mother was a step- or adopted mother. A value of 0 indicates no likely stepmother because (1) the mother identified in MOMLOC was probably the biological mother or (2) there is no mother of this person present in the household.

The codes for STEPMOM are as follows:

- 0 = Biological mother or no mother of this person present in household.
- 1 = Mother has no children borne or surviving.
- 2 = Child reports mother is deceased.
- 3 = Explicitly identified relationship (stepchild, adopted child, child of unmarried partner, stepchild/child-in-law).
- 4 = Mother reports no children in the home.
- 5 = Age difference between mother and child was less than 12 or greater than 54 years.
- 6 = Child exceeds known fertility of mother.

See PARRULE for a description of the linking process.

Users should note that there are many stepmothers and adopted mothers in the population that cannot be identified with information available in the censuses. Therefore, STEPMOM will always under-represent their actual number in the population.

Probable stepfather (STEPPOP)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-3

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

STEPPOP indicates whether a person's father, as identified by POPLOC, was most probably not the person's biological father. Non-zero values of STEPPOP explain why it is probable that the person's father was a step- or adopted father. A value of 0 indicates no likely stepfather because (1) the father identified in POPLOC was probably the biological father or (2) there is no father of this person present in the household.

The codes for STEPPOP are as follows:

- 0 = Biological father or no father of this person present in household.
- 1 = Child reports father is deceased.
- 2 = Explicitly identified relationship (stepchild, adopted child, child of unmarried partner; stepchild/child-in-law).
- 3 = Age difference between father and child was less than 12 or greater than 54 years.

See PARRULE for a description of the linking process.

Users should note that there are many stepfathers and adopted fathers in the population that cannot be identified with information available in the censuses. Therefore, STEPPOP will always under-represent their actual number in the population.

Man with more than one wife linked (POLYMAL)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Man with more than one wife linked (POLYMAL)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-1

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

POLYMAL indicates if a man had more than one wife linked to him in the constructed IPUMS variable SPLOC -- Spouse's Location in Household.

The point of POLYMAL is to facilitate using SPLOC in samples that identify polygamy. Some statistical matching procedures expect to find only one matching record for each subject record.

Woman is second or higher order wife (POLY2ND)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-1

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

POLY2ND indicates if a woman was the second or higher order wife linked to a husband in the constructed IPUMS variable SPLOC -- Spouse's Location in Household. The variable does not suggest the actual marital order of wives, only their relative positions in the person order of the household as it was enumerated.

The point of POLY2ND is to facilitate using SPLOC in samples that identify polygamy. Some statistical matching procedures expect to find only one matching record for each subject record.

Family unit membership (FAMUNIT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

FAMUNIT is a constructed variable indicating to which family within the household a person belongs.

All persons related to the household head receive a 1 (see RELATE). Each secondary family or secondary individual receives a higher code. For purposes of FAMUNIT, secondary families are individuals or groups of persons linked together by the IPUMS constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father).

Number of own family members in household (FAMSIZE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Number of own family members in household (FAMSIZE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

FAMSIZE counts the number of the person's own family members living in the household with her/him, including the person her/himself. These include all persons related to the person by blood, adoption, or marriage as indicated by the census forms or inferred from them.

FAMSIZE is calculated from the units identified in the IPUMS constructed variable FAMUNIT (family unit membership). The primary family is defined as all persons related to the head in the RELATE variable. Secondary families are individuals or groups of persons linked together by the IPUMS constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father).

Number of own children in household (NCHILD)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

NCHILD provides a count of the person's own children living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

Number of own children under age 5 in household (NCHLT5)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

NCHLT5 provides a count of the person's own children under age five living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

Age of eldest own child in household (ELDCH)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Age of eldest own child in household (ELDCH)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Description

ELDCH gives the age of the person's oldest own child living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

ELDCH is top-coded at age 50 or older.

Age of youngest own child in household (YNGCH)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

YNGCH gives the age of the person's youngest own child living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

YNGCH is top-coded at age 50 or older.

Relationship to household head [general version] (RELATE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

RELATE describes the relationship of the individual to the head of household (sometimes called the householder or reference person).

Relationship to household head [detailed version] (RELATED)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 1000-9999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

RELATED describes the relationship of the individual to the head of household (sometimes called the householder or reference person).

Age (AGE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

AGE gives age in years as of the person's last birthday prior to or on the day of enumeration.

Sex (SEX)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SEX reports the sex (gender) of the respondent.

Marital status [general version] (MARST)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[program universe for et,mz samples.

MARST describes the person's current marital status according to law or custom. Individuals who remarried should report the status relevant to their most recent marriage. Census instructions rarely explicitly limit marital status to strictly legal unions.

Note regarding universe: The lowest age at which a person can be anything but "never married" varies among samples.

Marital status [detailed version] (MARSTD)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Marital status [detailed version] (MARSTD)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

[program universe for et,mz samples.

MARSTD describes the person's current marital status according to law or custom. Individuals who remarried should report the status relevant to their most recent marriage. Census instructions rarely explicitly limit marital status to strictly legal unions.

Note regarding universe: The lowest age at which a person can be anything but "never married" varies among samples.

Consensual union (CONSENS)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CONSENS indicates whether the respondent was in a consensual union -- a de facto marriage.

Children ever born (CHBORN)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CHBORN reports the number of children ever born to each woman of whom the question was asked. In most samples, women were to report all live births by all fathers, whether or not the child was still living.

Province of previous residence, South Africa (MIGZA1)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MIGZA1 indicates the person's province of previous residence.

Polygamous union (POLYGAM)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Polygamous union (POLYGAM)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

POLYGAM indicates whether the respondent was in a polygamous union and, in some samples, the number of wives or the rank order of the wife.

Province of birth, South Africa (BPLZA)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

BPLZA indicates the province in South Africa in which the person was born.

Total income (INCTOT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 7
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

INCTOT reports the person's total personal income from all sources in the previous month or year.

Year of birth (BIRTHYR)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

BIRTHYR gives the person's year of birth.

Month of birth (BIRTHMO)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Month of birth (BIRTHMO)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

BIRTHMO indicates the person's month of birth.

Number of female children ever born (CHBORNF)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CHBORNF indicates the number of female children ever born to a woman. Only live births are counted.

Number of male children ever born (CHBORNM)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CHBORNM indicates the number of male children ever born to a woman. Only live births are counted.

Mortality status of mother (MORTMOT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MORTMOT indicates whether the person's biological mother was still living at the time of the census.

Mortality status of father (MORTFAT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Mortality status of father (MORTFAT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MORTFAT indicates whether the person's biological father was still living.

Citizenship (CITIZEN)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CITIZEN indicates the person's citizenship status within the country in which they were enumerated.

Year of immigration (YRIMM)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

YRIMM indicates the calendar year that a foreign-born person came to live in the country in which they were enumerated.

Years since immigrated (YRSIMM)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

YRSIMM indicates the number of years since a foreign-born person immigrated to their country of enumeration.

Years since immigrated, categorized (YRSIMM2)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Years since immigrated, categorized (YRSIMM2)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

YRSIMM2 indicates the number of years since a foreign-born person immigrated to the country. The number of years is grouped into intervals.

Race or color (RACE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 10-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Race identifies the racial group with which a person identified himself or herself, or to which an enumerator assigned them. Determinations of race are based largely on appearance or ancestral place of origin.

Language spoken at home, South Africa (LANGZA1)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

LANGZA1 indicates the language the person spoke in the home.

Second language spoken, South Africa (LANGZA2)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

LANGZA2 indicates the second most frequently spoken language in the home, for persons who spoke multiple languages.

Nativity status (NATIVITY)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Nativity status (NATIVITY)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

NATIVITY indicates whether the person was native- or foreign-born.

Year of last birth (LASTBYR)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 1900-9999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

LASTBYR indicates the year of birth of the last child borne by the respondent. The data refer to live births.

Sex of last birth (LASTBSEX)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

LASTBSEX indicates the sex of a woman's most recent birth.

Month of last birth (LASTBMO)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

LASTBMO indicates the month of birth of the last child borne by the respondent. The data refer to live births.

Number of births last year (BIRTHSLYR)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Number of births last year (BIRTHSLYR)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

BIRTHSLYR indicates whether any -- and in most cases how many -- children were born to a woman in the past twelve months.

Mortality status of last birth (LASTBMORT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

LASTBMORT indicates the mortality status of the last child born to a woman. There is no constraint on how long ago the child may have been born. Only live births are considered.

Year of death of the last child born (CHDEADYR)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CHDEADYR indicates whether the woman's last child had died and, if so, the year of the death. Respondents were to exclude still births from consideration. Also see CHDEADMO.

Month of death of the last child born (CHDEADMO)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CHDEADMO indicates whether the woman's last child had died and, if so, the month of the death. Respondents were to exclude still births from consideration. Also see CHDEADYR.

Age, grouped into intervals (AGE2)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-98

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

AGE2 gives computed years of age grouped into intervals.

School attendance (SCHOOL)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SCHOOL indicates whether or not the person attended school at the time of the census or within some specified period of time prior to the census.

Educational attainment, South Africa (EDUCZA)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

EDUCZA indicates the person's educational attainment in terms of the level of schooling completed and the number of years completed at that level.

Activity status (employment status) [general version] (EMPSTAT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Activity status (employment status) [general version] (EMPSTAT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

EMPSTAT indicates whether or not the respondent was part of the labor force -- working or seeking work -- over a specified period of time. Depending on the sample, EMPSTAT can also convey further information.

The first digit of EMPSTAT is fully comparable, and classifies the population into three groups: employed, unemployed, and inactive. The combination of employed and unemployed yields the total labor force. The second and third digits of EMPSTAT preserve additional information available for some countries and census years but not for others.

Employment status is sometimes referred to in other sources as "activity status".

Activity status (employment status) [detailed version] (EMPSTATD)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

EMPSTAT indicates whether or not the respondent was part of the labor force -- working or seeking work -- over a specified period of time. Depending on the sample, EMPSTAT can also convey further information.

The first digit of EMPSTAT is fully comparable, and classifies the population into three groups: employed, unemployed, and inactive. The combination of employed and unemployed yields the total labor force. The second and third digits of EMPSTAT preserve additional information available for some countries and census years but not for others.

Employment status is sometimes referred to in other sources as "activity status".

Employment disability (DISEMP)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

DISEMP indicates if the respondent was economically inactive because of disabilities.

Blind or vision-impaired (DISBLND)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

DISBLND indicates whether the person was blind or had limited vision.

Deaf or hearing-impaired (DISDEAF)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

DISDEAF indicates whether the person was deaf or had limited hearing.

Mute or speech impaired (DISMUTE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

DISMUTE indicates if the person could not speak or had a significant speech impediment.

Disability affecting lower extremities (DISLOWR)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

DISLOWR indicates whether the person lacked use of one or both legs.

Personal care limitation (DISCARE)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

DISCARE indicates whether the respondent had any permanent condition that made it difficult for him/her to take care of their personal needs.

Disability status (DISABLED)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Disability status (DISABLED)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

DISABLED indicates whether the person reported a disability of any kind.

Migration status, previous residence (MIGRATEP)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MIGRATEP indicates whether the person's most recent move (if any) was between minor administrative units, major units, or countries.

Person weight (PERWT)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 8
Decimals: 2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

PERWT indicates the number of persons in the actual population represented by the person in the sample.

For the samples that are truly weighted (see the comparability discussion), PERWT must be used to yield accurate statistics for the population.

NOTE: PERWT has 2 implied decimal places. That is, the last two digits of the eight-digit variable are decimal digits, but there is no actual decimal in the data.

Speaks English (SPEAKENG)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SPEAKENG indicates whether the respondent could speak English or if English was the respondent's language of literacy.

Country of birth (BPLCOUNTRY)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 5
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

BPLCOUNTRY indicates the person's country of birth.

Years of schooling (YRSCHOOL)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

YRSCHOOL indicates the highest grade/level of schooling the person had completed, in years. Only formal schooling is counted. YRSCHOOL accounts for the number of years of study, regardless of the track or kind of study. Information on degree and/or technical track is available in EDATTAIN. Years of schooling for Israel, categorized into intervals, are given in YRSCHOOL2.

Users should pay close attention to the top-codes in each sample, as discussed in the comparability section.

Educational attainment, international recode [general version] (EDATTAIN)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

EDATTAIN records the person's educational attainment in terms of the level of schooling completed (degree or other milestone). The emphasis on level completed is critical: a person attending the final year of secondary education receives the code for having completed lower secondary only -- and in some samples only primary.

EDATTAIN does not necessarily reflect any particular country's definition of the various levels of schooling in terms of terminology or the number of years of schooling. EDATTAIN is an attempt to merge -- into a single, roughly comparable variable -- samples that provide degrees, ones that provide actual years of schooling, and those that have some of both. In addition to EDATTAIN, a country-specific education classification is provided which loses no information and reflects the particular educational system of that country (for example EDUCBR for Brazil, EDUCCL for Chile, and EDUCUS for the United States). As always, users can refer to the original education source variables for each sample, if they wish.

Many samples also give single years of schooling completed, recorded in YRSCHOOL. Some samples provide educational information in a form that could not be incorporated into EDATTAIN.

Educational attainment, international recode [detailed version] (EDATTAIND)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

EDATTAIN records the person's educational attainment in terms of the level of schooling completed (degree or other milestone). The emphasis on level completed is critical: a person attending the final year of secondary education receives the code for having completed lower secondary only -- and in some samples only primary.

EDATTAIN does not necessarily reflect any particular country's definition of the various levels of schooling in terms of terminology or the number of years of schooling. EDATTAIN is an attempt to merge -- into a single, roughly comparable variable -- samples that provide degrees, ones that provide actual years of schooling, and those that have some of both. In addition to EDATTAIN, a country-specific education classification is provided which loses no information and reflects the particular educational system of that country (for example EDUCBR for Brazil, EDUCCL for Chile, and EDUCUS for the United States). As always, users can refer to the original education source variables for each sample, if they wish.

Many samples also give single years of schooling completed, recorded in YRSCHOOL. Some samples provide educational information in a form that could not be incorporated into EDATTAIN.

Year [person version] (YEARP)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

IPUMS sample identifier [person version] (SAMPLEP)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

Household serial number [person version] (SERIAL)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Household serial number [person version] (SERIAL)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 10
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

Country [person version] (COUNTRYP)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

Record type [person version] (RECTYPEP)

File: ZAF2011-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: character
Width: 1

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

Related Materials

Questionnaires

Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Afrikaans)

Title Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Afrikaans)
 Country South Africa
 Language Afrikaans
 Filename ZAF2011zuHh.pdf

Questionnaire A: Household Survey (English)

Title Questionnaire A: Household Survey (English)
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Filename ZAF2011enHh.pdf

Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Sesotho)

Title Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Sesotho)
 Country South Africa
 Language Sesotho
 Filename Census 2011_questionnaire_Sesotho.pdf

Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Siswati)

Title Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Siswati)
 Country South Africa
 Language Siswati
 Filename Census 2011_questionnaire_SiSwati.pdf

Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Tshivenda)

Title Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Tshivenda)
 Country South Africa
 Language Tshivenda
 Filename Census 2011_questionnaire_Tshivenda.pdf

Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Xitsonga)

Title Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Xitsonga)
 Country South Africa
 Language Xitsonga
 Filename Census 2011_questionnaire_Xitsonga.pdf

Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Sepedi)

Title Questionnaire A: Household Survey (Sepedi)
 Country South Africa
 Language Sepedi
 Filename Census 2011_questionnaire_Sepedi.pdf

Questionnaire B: Transient and Tourist Hotels

Title Questionnaire B: Transient and Tourist Hotels
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Filename ZAF2011enHotels.pdf

Questionnaire C: For Institutions Only

Title Questionnaire C: For Institutions Only
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Filename ZAF2011enInstitutions.pdf

Post-Enumeration Survey Household Questionnaire

Title Post-Enumeration Survey Household Questionnaire
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Filename ZAF2011enPES.pdf

Reports

Statistical Release (Revised) Census 2011

Title Statistical Release (Revised) Census 2011
 Author(s) Statistics South Africa
 Country South Africa
 Language English

Contents	
Contents	iii
Contents	iii
1. INTRODUCTION	1
1.1 Overview	1
1.2 How the count was done	1
1.2.1 Planning	1
1.2.2 Pre-enumeration	1
1.2.3 Enumeration	1
1.2.4 Data processing	2
1.2.5 Data editing and validation system	2
1.2.5.1 Editing team	2
1.2.5.2 Role of the team	2
1.2.5.3 Editing strategy for Census 2011	3
1.2.6 Independent monitoring and evaluation of Census field activities	3
1.2.7 Post-enumeration survey (PES)	3
1.2.7.1 Preparations for the PES	4
1.2.7.2 Methodology	4
1.2.7.3 Sampling	4
1.2.7.4 Questionnaire development	5
1.2.7.5 Fieldwork methodology	5
1.2.7.6 Matching and reconciliation methodology	5
1.2.7.7 PES data collection	5
1.2.7.8 Matching and reconciliation	6
1.2.7.9 Estimation and tabulation	7
1.3 Conclusion	8
2. GEOGRAPHY OF SOUTH AFRICA	9
2.1 Provincial boundary changes, 2001-2011	9
2.2 Local municipal boundary changes, 2001-2011	11
2.3 Comparing Census 2011 with previous Censuses.....	13
3. FINDINGS	14
3.1 Demographic characteristics	14
3.1.1 Introduction	14
3.1.2 Population size	14
3.1.3 Population composition	18
3.1.4 Sex ratio	19
3.1.5 Median age	21
3.1.6 Population structure	22
3.1.7 Concluding remarks	24
3.2 Migration	25
3.2.1 Introduction	25
3.2.2 Patterns of migration between Censuses 2001 and 2011	25
3.2.3 Life-time migration patterns	27
3.2.4 Citizenship	29
3.3 Education	30
3.3.1 Introduction	30
3.3.2 Attendance at an educational institution	31
3.3.3 Education attainment	33
3.4 Average annual household income	41
3.5 General health and functioning	44
3.5.1 Introduction	44
3.5.2 Type and degree of difficulty	46
3.5.3 Assistive devices	46
3.6 Labour market status	48
3.6.1 The labour market in South Africa.....	48
3.6.1.1 Introduction	48
3.6.1.2 National labour market results from Census 2011 and the QLFS_Q4:2011	49
3.6.1.3 Provincial labour market rates based on Census 2011 and QLFS_Q4:2011	50
3.6.1.4 Key labour market rates by population group, based on Census 2011	51
3.6.1.5 Key labour market rates by sex and population group, based on Census 2011	52
3.6.1.6 Key labour market rates by age group based on Census 2011	54
3.6.2 Conclusion	55
3.7 Housing	56
3.7.1 Introduction	56
3.7.2 Households	56
3.7.3 Housing	57
3.7.4 Access to services	59
3.7.5 Household goods	65
3.7.6 Conclusion	67
3.8 Mortality	68
3.8.1 Introduction	68
3.9 Parental survival	77
List of maps	
Map 2.1: Provincial boundary changes since 2001	10
Map 2.2: Municipal boundary changes since 2001	12

Filename P030142011.pdf

Statistical Release Census 2011

Title Statistical Release Census 2011
 Date 2012-01-01
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Publisher(s) Statistics South Africa
 Description This is the final report provided with the Census 2011 dataset
 Filename census-2011-release.pdf

Highlights of Key Results

Title Highlights of Key Results
 Date 2012-01-01
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Publisher(s) Statistics South Africa
 Description This document reports the main findings of the 2011 Census
 Filename census-2011-key-results.pdf

Post-Enumeration Survey: Results and Methodology

Title Post-Enumeration Survey: Results and Methodology
 Date 2012-01-01
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Publisher(s) Statistics South Africa
 Description This documents the Post-Enumeration survey process
 Filename census-2011-post-enumeration-survey.pdf

Technical documents

Census Undercount and Strategies, Version 6

Title Census Undercount and Strategies, Version 6
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Filename Census_2011_Undercount Strategies-version_6a.pdf

Census Information Guide

Title Census Information Guide
 Author(s) Statistics South Africa
 Country South Africa
 Language English
 Filename Census_info_guide.pdf

How the Count Was Done

Title	How the Count Was Done
Date	2012-01-01
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Publisher(s)	Statistics South Africa
Description	This document gives an overview of the census process
Filename	census-2011-how-the-count-was-done.pdf

Census 2011 Record Layout

Title	Census 2011 Record Layout
Date	2014-01-01
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Publisher(s)	Statistics South Africa
Description	This provides information on record layouts in the census data files
Filename	census-2011-record-layout.xls

Census 2011 Geography Metadata

Title	Census 2011 Geography Metadata
Date	2012-01-01
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Publisher(s)	Statistics South Africa
Description	The Census 2011 geography metadata document details the geographic levels in the census data.
Filename	census-2011-10%-geography.pdf

An Assessment of Household Deaths Collected during Census 2011

Title	An Assessment of Household Deaths Collected during Census 2011
Date	2014-04-01
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Publisher(s)	Statistics South Africa
Description	This document give details on collection of data on household deaths, from section I: Mortality in the last 12 months in Census Questionnaire A.
Filename	census-2011-deaths.pdf

Census 2011 10% Sample Metadata

Title	Census 2011 10% Sample Metadata
Date	2012-01-01
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Publisher(s)	Statistics South Africa
Description	The Census 2011 10% sample metadata document provides information to assist data users to analyse the data from the census
Filename	census-2011-10% sample-metadata.pdf

Codes for Countries and Municipalities in the Census 2011 Dataset

Title	Codes for Countries and Municipalities in the Census 2011 Dataset
Date	2014-01-01
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Publisher(s)	Statistics SA
Description	This is a list of codes for countries and municipalities in the Census 2011 dataset
Filename	20140414-country-municipal-codes.xlsx

Geography Codes for the 2011 Census at Small Area Layer Level

Title	Geography Codes for the 2011 Census at Small Area Layer Level
Date	2014-01-01
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Contributor(s)	DataFirst
Description	This is a reference document which lists geography for the 2011 South African census at Small Area Layer level
Filename	census-2011-geography-datafirst.xlsx
